

# PeopleSoft.<sup>®</sup>

---

## PeopleSoftCash Management 8.8 PeopleBook

---

**December 2003**

PeopleSoft Cash Management 8.8 PeopleBook  
SKU FSCM88TCM-B 1203  
Copyright 1992-2003 PeopleSoft, Inc. All rights reserved.

All material contained in this documentation is proprietary and confidential to PeopleSoft, Inc. ("PeopleSoft"), protected by copyright laws and subject to the nondisclosure provisions of the applicable PeopleSoft agreement. No part of this documentation may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, including, but not limited to, electronic, graphic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise without the prior written permission of PeopleSoft.

This documentation is subject to change without notice, and PeopleSoft does not warrant that the material contained in this documentation is free of errors. Any errors found in this document should be reported to PeopleSoft in writing.

The copyrighted software that accompanies this document is licensed for use only in strict accordance with the applicable license agreement which should be read carefully as it governs the terms of use of the software and this document, including the disclosure thereof.

PeopleSoft, PeopleTools, PS/nVision, PeopleCode, PeopleBooks, PeopleTalk, and Vantive are registered trademarks, and Pure Internet Architecture, Intelligent Context Manager, and The Real-Time Enterprise are trademarks of PeopleSoft, Inc. All other company and product names may be trademarks of their respective owners. The information contained herein is subject to change without notice.

## Open Source Disclosure

PeopleSoft takes no responsibility for its use or distribution of any open source or shareware software or documentation and disclaims any and all liability or damages resulting from use of said software or documentation. The following open source software may be used in PeopleSoft products and the following disclaimers are provided.

Apache Software Foundation

This product includes software developed by the Apache Software Foundation (<http://www.apache.org/>). Copyright (c) 1999-2000 The Apache Software Foundation. All rights reserved.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE APACHE SOFTWARE FOUNDATION OR ITS CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

OpenSSL

Copyright (c) 1998-2003 The OpenSSL Project. All rights reserved.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE OpenSSL PROJECT "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE OpenSSL PROJECT OR ITS CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

SSLeay

Copyright (c) 1995-1998 Eric Young. All rights reserved.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY ERIC YOUNG "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Loki Library

Copyright (c) 2001 by Andrei Alexandrescu. This code accompanies the book:

Alexandrescu, Andrei. "Modern C++ Design: Generic Programming and Design Patterns Applied". Copyright (c) 2001. Addison-Wesley. Permission to use, copy, modify, distribute and sell this software for any purpose is hereby granted without fee, provided that the above copyright notice appear in all copies and that both that copyright notice and this permission notice appear in supporting documentation.

# Contents

## General Preface

<b>About These PeopleBooks.....</b>	<b>xiii</b>
PeopleSoft Application Prerequisites.....	xiii
PeopleSoft Application Fundamentals.....	xiii
Related Documentation.....	xiv
Obtaining Documentation Updates.....	xiv
Ordering Printed Documentation.....	xiv
Typographical Conventions and Visual Cues.....	xv
Typographical Conventions.....	xv
Visual Cues.....	xvi
Comments and Suggestions.....	xvii
Common Elements in These PeopleBooks .....	xvii

## Preface

<b>PeopleSoft Cash Management PeopleBook Preface.....</b>	<b>xix</b>
PeopleSoft Application Fundamentals.....	xix
Pages With Deferred Processing.....	xix
Common Elements Used in This PeopleBook.....	xx

## Chapter 1

<b>Getting Started With PeopleSoft Cash Management .....</b>	<b>1</b>
PeopleSoft Cash Management Business Processes.....	1
PeopleSoft Cash Management Integrations.....	1
PeopleSoft Cash Management Implementation.....	2

## Chapter 2

<b>Defining Cash Management Processing Options.....</b>	<b>7</b>
Setting Up Accounting Templates and Events.....	7
Setting Up Bank Information.....	7
Defining Business Calendars.....	8
Page Used to Define Business Calendars.....	8
Defining a Business Calendar.....	8
Defining Business Unit Options.....	9

## Contents

Page Used to Define Business Unit Options.....	9
Defining Business Unit Options.....	9
Defining Business Unit Treasury VAT Options.....	11
Defining Cross-Referenced Currency Codes and Holiday List IDs.....	12
Pages Used to Define Cross-Referenced Currency Codes and Holiday List IDs.....	12
Define Currency Codes and Holiday List IDs.....	12
Defining Electronic Funds Transfer Templates.....	12
Defining Facilities.....	13
Defining Fees.....	13
Defining Internal Accounts.....	13
Defining Market Rates.....	13
Pages Used to Define Market Rates.....	14
Defining Market Rate and Exchange Code Information.....	14
Defining Market Rates.....	14
Viewing and Adding Market Rate Information.....	16
Editing Rate Variance Information.....	16
Defining Rates Reset Codes.....	17
Defining Netting.....	17
Defining Position Analysis.....	17
Defining Cash Management Bank Statement Accounting Functionality.....	17

## Chapter 3

<b>Navigating in Treasury Management.....</b>	<b>19</b>
Navigating in Treasury Management.....	19
Pages Used to Navigate in Treasury Management.....	19

## Chapter 4

<b>Managing Fees and Account Analysis.....</b>	<b>23</b>
Understanding Managing Fees and Account Analysis.....	23
Common Elements in this Chapter.....	24
Setting Up Fees Structures.....	25
Pages Used to Setup Fee Structure .....	25
Creating Fee Transaction Tables.....	25
Defining Fee Codes.....	26
Entering SQL Where Criteria.....	28
Setting Up Fee Structures.....	28
Defining Fee Structures.....	29
Editing Base Fee Calculations .....	30

Comparing Fee Structures.....	30
Pages Used to Compare Fee Structures.....	31
Comparing Fee Structures.....	31
Performing Account Analysis.....	31
Common Elements in this Section.....	32
Pages Used to Perform Account Analysis.....	33
Manually Creating Statements.....	33
Entering General Statement Information.....	34
Entering Statement Rate Information.....	34
Entering Balance Compensation Information.....	34
Entering Balance Adjustment Information.....	34
Entering Service Charge Information.....	35
Entering Service Adjustment Information.....	35
Automatically Importing Statement Information.....	36
Validating Account Analysis Information.....	36
Using the Account Analysis Manager.....	36
Page Used for the Account Analysis Manager.....	36
Using the Account Analysis Manager.....	36
Creating Fee Entries.....	37
Pages Used to Create Fee Entries.....	37
Creating Fee Entries.....	38
Creating External Transactions Fee Entries.....	39

## Chapter 5

<b>Defining Cash Positions .....</b>	<b>41</b>
Understanding Trees and Positions .....	41
Common Elements Used in This Chapter.....	42
Setting Up Trees and Positions .....	42
Common Elements in this Section.....	44
Pages Used to Setup Trees and Positions.....	44
Defining Position Field Types.....	46
Defining Position Sources .....	50
Creating a Position Tree.....	51
Entering Position Tree Source Information.....	52
Specifying Tree-Wide Options.....	52
Defining Tree Nodes.....	53
Defining Node Properties.....	55
Defining Node Properties SQL Selection Criteria for Position Source Sets.....	55
Defining Position Limits.....	56

Creating Position SQL.....	58
Scheduling Position Tree SQL.....	58
Defining Time Buckets .....	58
Calculate Position Time Spans .....	60
Managing Position Worksheets.....	61
Common Elements in This Section.....	61
Pages Used to Manage Position Worksheets.....	62
Generate Position Worksheets.....	62
Defining Position Manager Options.....	63
Creating an Ad-Hoc Position Worksheet.....	65
Viewing Position Manager Results.....	66
Viewing Transaction Details by Source.....	68
Creating Forecasting Rules.....	68
Copying Worksheets.....	69
Scheduling Position Manager.....	70
Exporting the Worksheet with PS/nVision.....	70
Creating Intraday Bank Reporting Worksheets.....	70
Intraday Bank Reporting and Cash Positions.....	71
Prerequisites.....	71
Pages Used to Create Intraday Cash Position Worksheets.....	72
Calculating Intraday Cash Position Reporting Worksheets.....	73
Manually Creating Position Worksheet Data .....	74
Pages Used to Manually Create Position Worksheet Data.....	76
Entering Manual Position Information.....	76
Defining Additional Search Criteria .....	77
Copying Data Forward.....	77
Entering Additional Manual Position Entry Information.....	77
Generating Cash Management Position Reports.....	77
Pages Used to Generate Cash Position Reports.....	78

## Chapter 6

<b>Managing Bilateral Netting.....</b>	<b>79</b>
Understanding the Bilateral Netting Process.....	79
Prerequisites.....	81
Common Elements in this Chapter.....	82
Setting Up Bilateral Nets.....	82
Prerequisites.....	84
Pages Used to Set Up Bilateral Nets.....	85
Defining Participant Relationships.....	85

Adding Multiple Vendors .....	86
Adding Multiple Customers.....	87
Defining Netting Rules with SQL Statements.....	88
Entering Primary Information for Netting Contracts.....	88
Entering Settlement Information for Netting Contracts.....	89
Excluding Vouchers from Netting.....	91
Selecting Nets Automatically.....	91
Pages Used to Automatically Select Nets .....	91
Generating the Automatic Netting Selection Process.....	91
Creating Nets Manually .....	92
Common Elements in this Section.....	93
Pages Used to Manually Create Nets .....	93
Entering Primary Information.....	93
Defining Settlement Instructions.....	94
Setting Up the Payables Leg.....	95
Adding Multiple Vouchers to the Payables Leg.....	96
Setting Up the Receivables Leg .....	96
Adding Multiple Items to the Receivables Leg.....	97
Adjusting Manually Netted Information.....	97
Common Elements Used in This Section.....	98
Pages Used to Adjust Manually Netted Information.....	98
Adjusting Manual Net Information.....	98
Adjusting Settlement Instructions.....	100
Adjust Payables Voucher Information.....	100
Adjust Receivables Item Information.....	101
Processing Multicurrency Nets.....	102
Multicurrency Netting Functionality.....	102
Prerequisites.....	102
Processing Multicurrency Nets.....	103
Administering Nets.....	104
Pages Used to Administer Nets.....	104
Approving Nets.....	104
Canceling Nets.....	105
Closing Nets.....	106
Understanding the Net Closing Process in Pay Cycle Process.....	107
Inquiring on Bilateral Nets.....	107
Pages Used to Inquire on Bilateral Nets.....	108

**Chapter 7**

<b>Transferring Funds .....</b>	<b>109</b>
Understanding the Transfer Funds Process.....	109
Prerequisites.....	111
Common Elements Used in This Chapter.....	112
Creating and Approving Funds Transfer Templates.....	112
Pages Used to Create and Approve Funds Transfer Templates.....	114
Entering Template Origin Information.....	114
Specifying Template Destination Information.....	115
Configuring Template EFT Handling Options.....	118
Defining Template Intermediary Bank Routings.....	118
Entering Template Transfer Addenda.....	118
Adding Template Internal Notes.....	118
Recording Template Beneficiary Address Information.....	118
Defining Template Field Security .....	118
Managing Funds Transfer Template Approval.....	119
Page Used to Manage Funds Transfer Template Approval.....	120
Approving Transfer Template Changes.....	120
Beginning Transfer Funds Requests.....	120
Page Used to Begin a Transfer Funds Request.....	121
Beginning a Transfer Funds Request.....	121
Creating EFT Requests.....	122
Pages Used to Create an EFT Request.....	123
Entering Transfer Origin Information.....	123
Specifying Destination Information.....	125
Configuring EFT Handling Options.....	127
Defining Intermediary Bank Routings.....	127
Entering Transfer Addenda.....	127
Adding Internal Notes.....	127
Recording Beneficiary Address Information .....	127
Creating Fee Entries for EFT Requests.....	128
Pages Used to Create Fee Entries for EFT Requests.....	128
Defining Fee Codes for EFT Requests.....	128
Creating Fee Entries Using EFT Requests Fee Codes.....	128
Creating Bank Account Transfers.....	128
Understanding Bank Account Transfers.....	128
Prerequisites.....	129
Pages Used to Create Bank Account Transfers.....	130
Processing Bank Account Transfers.....	130
Viewing Associated Bank Transfer ChartFields .....	132

Viewing Accounting Events.....	133
Processing Bank Transfers Using Electronic Settlements.....	133
Creating Deals Transfers.....	133
Reviewing Repetitive Transfers.....	133
Page Used to Review Repetitive Transfers.....	133
Reviewing Repetitive Transfers.....	133

## Chapter 8

<b>Working with Settlements .....</b>	<b>135</b>
Understanding the Settlements Payment Process.....	135
Cash Management Payment Dispatch Process.....	136
Settlement Workflow.....	137
Settlement Approval.....	137
Prerequisites.....	138
Common Elements in this Chapter.....	138
Selecting Settlements for Outbound Submission.....	140
Pages Used to Select Settlements.....	140
Selecting Settlements for Outbound Submission .....	140
Using Payment Lifecycle Functionality.....	142
Manually Approving Settlements.....	143
Pages Used to Manually Approve Settlements.....	143
Manually Approving Settlement Payments.....	143
Using Payment Life Cycle Functionality.....	145
Dispatching Settlements.....	145
Pages Used to Dispatch Settlements.....	145
Dispatching Settlements.....	145
Viewing Settlement Addenda Information.....	146
Using Payment Lifecycle Functionality.....	146
Reviewing Payment Files.....	147
Pages Used to Review Payment Files.....	147
Reviewing Payment Files.....	147
Reviewing Payment File Data.....	149
Reviewing Payment File Events Log.....	149
Reviewing Payment File Data.....	149
Using the Settlement Manager.....	149
Pages Used with the Settlement Manager.....	150
Using the Settlement Manager .....	150
Setting Settlement Manager Preferences.....	150
Specifying Deal Settlement Netting.....	151

Page Used to Specify Deal Settlement Netting.....	151
Specifying Deal Settlement Netting.....	151
Selecting Payable and Receivable Cash Flows.....	152

## Chapter 9

<b>Managing Treasury Accounting .....</b>	<b>153</b>
---	------------

Understanding the Treasury Management Accounting Process.....	153
Accounting Templates.....	153
Accounting Events.....	153
Interunit and Intraunit Processing in Accounting.....	155
Establishing Accounting Templates.....	157
Pages Used to Establish Accounting Templates.....	157
Entering Accounting Template Information.....	157
Defining Additional Substitution Criteria .....	162
Linking Templates with the Associated Accounting Events.....	163
Processing Accounting Entries.....	164
Understanding the Automated Accounting Build Process.....	164
Pages Used to Process Accounting Entries .....	165
Processing Automated Accounting.....	165
Managing Accounting Entries.....	165
Common Elements for this Section.....	165
Pages Used to Manage Accounting Entries .....	166
Adjusting Accounting Entries.....	166
Creating Ad Hoc Accounting Entries.....	170
Reviewing and Approving Accounting Entries.....	172
Viewing the Accounting Summary.....	172
Reviewing Accounting Information.....	172
Common Elements Used in this Section.....	173
Pages Used to Review Accounting Information.....	173
Maintaining Fiscal Period Closure.....	173
Prerequisites.....	174
Page Used to Maintain Fiscal Period Closure.....	175
Maintaining Fiscal Period Closure.....	175

## Chapter 10

<b>Processing VAT Transactions in Treasury Management.....</b>	<b>177</b>
--	------------

Understanding VAT Processing in Treasury Management.....	177
Prerequisites.....	178

Setting Up VAT for Treasury Management.....	178
Prerequisites.....	179
Pages Used to Set Up VAT for Treasury Management.....	180
Defining Treasury Business Unit VAT Defaults .....	180
Defining Bank VAT Processing Defaults.....	181
Defining Bank Branch VAT Processing Defaults .....	181
Defining Treasury Accounting Template VAT Processing Defaults.....	181
Editing VAT External Transaction Details.....	181
The Effects of Changing VAT Defaults.....	182
Pages Used to Edit VAT External Transaction Details.....	182
Editing VAT External Transaction Details .....	182
Creating VAT Transactions for Fees.....	189
Pages Used to Create VAT for Fees.....	189
Defining VAT-Applicable Fee Codes.....	190
Entering Fees.....	190
Viewing VAT Options for a Fee Entry.....	190
Creating VAT Transactions Using Automatic Reconciliation.....	190
Pages Used to Create VAT Using Automatic Reconciliation.....	191
Force-reconciling VAT-Applicable Transactions.....	191
Managing VAT Accounting.....	191
Pages Used to Manage VAT Accounting.....	192
Processing VAT with Automated Accounting.....	192
Reviewing VAT Accounting Entries.....	192
Reviewing Treasury VAT Information.....	194
Processing Final Treasury Management VAT Transactions.....	196

## Chapter 11

<b>Performing In-House Banking Activities.....</b>	<b>197</b>
Prerequisites.....	197
Managing In-House Banking Activities.....	197
Pages Used to Manage In-House Banking Activities.....	198
Generating Schedules.....	198
Calculating Interest Accruals.....	198
Generating the In-House Bank Statement Report.....	199
Page Used to Generate the In-House Bank Statement Report.....	199

**Appendix A**

<b>Cash Management - Configuring Batch Processes.....</b>	<b>201</b>
Configuring Temporary Tables for Batch Processing.....	201

**Appendix B**

<b>Delivered Workflows for PeopleSoft Cash Management.....</b>	<b>203</b>
Delivered Workflows for PeopleSoft Cash Management.....	203
Settlement Selection and Settlement Approval.....	203

**Appendix C**

<b>PeopleSoft Cash Management Reports.....</b>	<b>205</b>
PeopleSoft Cash Management Reports: A to Z.....	205

<b>Glossary of PeopleSoft Terms.....</b>	<b>209</b>
--	------------

<b>Index .....</b>	<b>225</b>
--------------------	------------

# About These PeopleBooks

PeopleBooks provide you with the information that you need to implement and use PeopleSoft applications.

This preface discusses:

- PeopleSoft application prerequisites.
- PeopleSoft application fundamentals.
- Related documentation.
- Typographical elements and visual cues.
- Comments and suggestions.
- Common elements in PeopleBooks.

---

**Note.** PeopleBooks document only page elements that require additional explanation. If a page element is not documented with the process or task in which it is used, then either it requires no additional explanation or it is documented with common elements for the section, chapter, PeopleBook, or product line. Elements that are common to all PeopleSoft applications are defined in this preface.

---

## PeopleSoft Application Prerequisites

To benefit fully from the information that is covered in these books, you should have a basic understanding of how to use PeopleSoft applications.

See *Using PeopleSoft Applications*.

You might also want to complete at least one PeopleSoft introductory training course.

You should be familiar with navigating the system and adding, updating, and deleting information by using PeopleSoft windows, menus, and pages. You should also be comfortable using the World Wide Web and the Microsoft Windows or Windows NT graphical user interface.

These books do not review navigation and other basics. They present the information that you need to use the system and implement your PeopleSoft applications most effectively.

---

## PeopleSoft Application Fundamentals

Each application PeopleBook provides implementation and processing information for your PeopleSoft database. However, additional, essential information describing the setup and design of your system appears in a companion volume of documentation called the application fundamentals PeopleBook. Each PeopleSoft product line has its own version of this documentation.

The application fundamentals PeopleBook consists of important topics that apply to many or all PeopleSoft applications across a product line. Whether you are implementing a single application, some combination of applications within the product line, or the entire product line, you should be familiar with the contents of this central PeopleBook. It is the starting point for fundamentals, such as setting up control tables and administering security.

---

## Related Documentation

This section discusses how to:

- Obtain documentation updates.
- Order printed documentation.

## Obtaining Documentation Updates

You can find updates and additional documentation for this release, as well as previous releases, on the PeopleSoft Customer Connection web site. Through the Documentation section of PeopleSoft Customer Connection, you can download files to add to your PeopleBook Library. You'll find a variety of useful and timely materials, including updates to the full PeopleSoft documentation that is delivered on your PeopleBooks CD-ROM.

---

**Important!** Before you upgrade, you must check PeopleSoft Customer Connection for updates to the upgrade instructions. PeopleSoft continually posts updates as the upgrade process is refined.

---

### See Also

PeopleSoft Customer Connection web site, <http://www.peoplesoft.com/corp/en/login.asp>

## Ordering Printed Documentation

You can order printed, bound volumes of the complete PeopleSoft documentation that is delivered on your PeopleBooks CD-ROM. PeopleSoft makes printed documentation available for each major release shortly after the software is shipped. Customers and partners can order printed PeopleSoft documentation by using any of these methods:

- Web
- Telephone
- Email

### Web

From the Documentation section of the PeopleSoft Customer Connection web site, access the PeopleSoft Press web site under the Ordering PeopleBooks topic. The PeopleSoft Press web site is a joint venture between PeopleSoft and Consolidated Publications Incorporated (CPI), the book print vendor. Use a credit card, money order, cashier's check, or purchase order to place your order.

## Telephone

Contact CPI at 800 888 3559.

## Email

Send email to CPI at [psoftpress@cc.larwood.com](mailto:psoftpress@cc.larwood.com).

## See Also

PeopleSoft Customer Connection web site, <http://www.peoplesoft.com/corp/en/login.asp>

# Typographical Conventions and Visual Cues

This section discusses:

- Typographical conventions.
- Visual cues.

## Typographical Conventions

The following table contains the typographical conventions that are used in PeopleBooks:

Typographical Convention or Visual Cue	Description
<b>Bold</b>	Indicates PeopleCode function names, method names, language constructs, and PeopleCode reserved words that must be included literally in the function call.
<i>Italics</i>	Indicates field values, emphasis, and PeopleSoft or other book-length publication titles. In PeopleCode syntax, italic items are placeholders for arguments that your program must supply.  We also use italics when we refer to words as words or letters as letters, as in the following: Enter the number <i>0</i> , not the letter <i>O</i> .
<b>KEY+KEY</b>	Indicates a key combination action. For example, a plus sign (+) between keys means that you must hold down the first key while you press the second key. For <b>ALT+W</b> , hold down the <b>ALT</b> key while you press <b>W</b> .
<b>Monospace font</b>	Indicates a PeopleCode program or other code example.
“ ” (quotation marks)	Indicate chapter titles in cross-references and words that are used differently from their intended meanings.

Typographical Convention or Visual Cue	Description
... (ellipses)	Indicate that the preceding item or series can be repeated any number of times in PeopleCode syntax.
{ } (curly braces)	Indicate a choice between two options in PeopleCode syntax. Options are separated by a pipe (   ).
[ ] (square brackets)	Indicate optional items in PeopleCode syntax.
& (ampersand)	<p>When placed before a parameter in PeopleCode syntax, an ampersand indicates that the parameter is an already instantiated object.</p> <p>Ampersands also precede all PeopleCode variables.</p>
(ISO)	<p>Information that applies to a specific country, to the U.S. federal government, or to the education and government market, is preceded by a three-letter code in parentheses.</p> <p>The code for the U.S. federal government is USF; the code for education and government is E&amp;G, and the country codes from the International Standards Organization are used for specific countries. Here is an example:</p> <p>(GER) If you're administering German employees, German law requires you to indicate special nationality and citizenship information for German workers using nationality codes established by the German DEUEV Directive.</p>
Cross-references	PeopleBooks provide cross-references either below the heading "See Also" or on a separate line preceded by the word <i>See</i> . Cross-references lead to other documentation that is pertinent to the immediately preceding documentation.

## Visual Cues

PeopleBooks contain the following visual cues.

### Notes

Notes indicate information that you should pay particular attention to as you work with the PeopleSoft system.

---

**Note.** Example of a note.

---

A note that is preceded by *Important!* is crucial and includes information that concerns what you must do for the system to function properly.

---

**Important!** Example of an important note.

---

## Warnings

Warnings indicate crucial configuration considerations. Pay close attention to warning messages.

---

**Warning!** Example of a warning.

---

---

## Comments and Suggestions

Your comments are important to us. We encourage you to tell us what you like, or what you would like to see changed about PeopleBooks and other PeopleSoft reference and training materials. Please send your suggestions to:

PeopleSoft Product Documentation Manager PeopleSoft, Inc. 4460 Hacienda Drive Pleasanton, CA 94588

Or send email comments to [doc@peoplesoft.com](mailto:doc@peoplesoft.com).

While we cannot guarantee to answer every email message, we will pay careful attention to your comments and suggestions.

---

## Common Elements in These PeopleBooks

<b>As of Date</b>	The last date for which a report or process includes data.
<b>Business Unit</b>	An ID that represents a high-level organization of business information. You can use a business unit to define regional or departmental units within a larger organization.
<b>Description</b>	Enter up to 30 characters of text.
<b>Effective Date</b>	The date on which a table row becomes effective; the date that an action begins. For example, to close out a ledger on June 30, the effective date for the ledger closing would be July 1. This date also determines when you can view and change the information. Pages or panels and batch processes that use the information use the current row.
<b>Once, Always, and Don't Run</b>	Select Once to run the request the next time the batch process runs. After the batch process runs, the process frequency is automatically set to Don't Run.  Select Always to run the request every time the batch process runs.  Select Don't Run to ignore the request when the batch process runs.
<b>Report Manager</b>	Click to access the Report List page, where you can view report content, check the status of a report, and see content detail messages (which show you a description of the report and the distribution list).

<b>Process Monitor</b>	Click to access the Process List page, where you can view the status of submitted process requests.
<b>Run</b>	Click to access the Process Scheduler request page, where you can specify the location where a process or job runs and the process output format.
<b>Request ID</b>	An ID that represents a set of selection criteria for a report or process.
<b>User ID</b>	An ID that represents the person who generates a transaction.
<b>SetID</b>	An ID that represents a set of control table information, or TableSets. TableSets enable you to share control table information and processing options among business units. The goal is to minimize redundant data and system maintenance tasks. When you assign a setID to a record group in a business unit, you indicate that all of the tables in the record group are shared between that business unit and any other business unit that also assigns that setID to that record group. For example, you can define a group of common job codes that are shared between several business units. Each business unit that shares the job codes is assigned the same setID for that record group.
<b>Short Description</b>	Enter up to 15 characters of text.

### **See Also**

*Using PeopleSoft Applications*

*PeopleSoft Process Scheduler*

# PeopleSoft Cash Management PeopleBook Preface

This preface discusses:

- PeopleSoft application fundamentals.
- Pages with deferred processing.
- Common elements in this PeopleBook.

---

**Note.** This PeopleBook documents only page elements that require additional explanation. If a page element is not documented with the process or task in which it is used, then it either requires no additional explanation or is documented with the common elements for the section, chapter, or PeopleBook.

---

## PeopleSoft Application Fundamentals

*PeopleSoft Cash Management PeopleBook* provides implementation and processing information for PeopleSoft Cash Management. However, additional, essential information describing the setup and design of your system resides in companion documentation. The companion documentation consists of important topics that apply to many or all PeopleSoft applications across the Financials, Enterprise Service Automation, and Supply Chain Management product lines. You should be familiar with the contents of these PeopleBooks.

The following companion PeopleBooks apply specifically to PeopleSoft Cash Management.

- *PeopleSoft Application Fundamentals for FIN, ESA, and SCM PeopleBook*
- *PeopleSoft Setting Up Global Options and Reports PeopleBook*
- *PeopleSoft Bank Setup and Processing PeopleBook*

---

## Pages With Deferred Processing

Several pages in PeopleSoft Cash Management operate in deferred processing mode. Most fields on these pages are not updated or validated until you save the page or refresh it by clicking a button, link, or tab. This delayed processing has various implications for the field values on the page—for example, if a field contains a default value, any value you enter before the system updates the page overrides the default. Another implication is that the system updates quantity balances or totals only when you save or otherwise refresh the page.

### See Also

*PeopleTools PeopleBook: PeopleSoft Application Designer*

---

## Common Elements Used in This PeopleBook

<b>Account</b>	ChartField that identifies the nature of a transaction for corporate accounts.
<b>Affiliate</b>	ChartField used to map transactions between business units when using a single interunit account.
<b>Alt Acct</b> (alternate account)	ChartField that identifies the nature of a transaction for statutory accounts. This field appears only if you enabled the Alternate Account option for your organization and for the general ledger business unit.
<b>Class</b>	ChartField that identifies a particular appropriation when you combine it with a fund, department ID, program code, and budget reference.
<b>Currency</b>	Code that identifies the type of currency for an amount, such as USD or FRF.
<b>Dept</b> (department)	ChartField that indicates who is responsible for or affected by the transaction.
<b>Description</b>	Freeflow text up to 256 characters.
<b>Effective Date</b>	Date on which a table row becomes effective; the date that an action begins. For example, to close out a ledger on June 30, the effective date for the ledger closing would be July 1. This date also determines when you can view and change the information. Pages and batch processes that use the information use the current row.
<b>Fund</b>	ChartField that represents structural units for education and government accounting. Can also represent a divisional breakdown in your organization.
<b>Fund Affiliate</b>	ChartField used to correlate transactions between funds when using a single intraunit account.
<b>Language</b>	The language in which you want the field labels and report headings of your reports to print. The field values appear as you enter them.
<b>Oper Unit</b> (operating unit)	ChartField used to identify a location, such as a distribution warehouse or sales center.
<b>Process Frequency</b>	Select from:  <i>Once</i> : Runs the request the next time the batch process runs. After the batch process runs, the process frequency is automatically set to <i>Don't Run</i> .  <i>Always</i> : Runs the request every time the batch process runs.  <i>Don't Run</i> : Ignores the request when the batch process runs.
<b>Process Monitor</b>	This link takes you to the Process List page, where you can view the status of submitted process requests.
<b>Product</b>	ChartField that captures additional information useful for profitability and cash flow analysis by product sold or manufactured.

<b>Program</b>	ChartField that identifies groups of related activities, cost centers, revenue centers, responsibility centers, and academic programs. Tracks revenue and expenditures for programs.
<b>Project</b>	ChartField that captures information for project or grant accounting.
<b>Report ID</b>	The report identifier.
<b>Report Manager</b>	This link takes you to the Report List page, where you can view report content, check the status of a report, and see content detail messages (which show you a description of the report and the distribution list).
<b>Run</b>	This button takes you to the Process Scheduler request page, where you can specify the location where a process or job runs and the process output format.
<b>Run Control ID</b>	An identification code that identifies the run parameters for a report or process.
<b>SetID</b>	An identification code that represents a set of control table information or table sets. A tableset is a group of tables (records) necessary to define your company's structure and processing options.
<b>Short Description</b>	Freeflow text up to 15 characters.
<b>Status</b>	Indicates whether a row in a table is <i>Active</i> or <i>Inactive</i> . You cannot display inactive rows on transaction pages or use them for running batch processes. To maintain an audit trail, deactivate rather than delete data that you no longer use.
<b>Unit</b>	Business unit for an item.

## See Also

*PeopleTools PeopleBook: PeopleSoft Process Scheduler*

*PeopleTools PeopleBook: Using PeopleSoft Applications*



# CHAPTER 1

## Getting Started With PeopleSoft Cash Management

This chapter discusses:

- PeopleSoft Cash Management business processes.
- PeopleSoft Cash Management integrations.
- PeopleSoft Cash Management implementation.

---

### PeopleSoft Cash Management Business Processes

PeopleSoft Cash Management provides the following business processes:

- Bank fee and account analysis.
- Position tree creation and maintenance.
- Cash position calculation and review.
- Transactional bilateral netting.
- Electronic funds transfers (EFTs).
- Cash flow settlement payments.
- Accounting events and accounting entry creation, maintenance, and review.
- VAT (value added tax) accounting creation and adjustment.

We cover these business processes in the business process chapters in this PeopleBook.

---

### PeopleSoft Cash Management Integrations

PeopleSoft Cash Management integrates with the following PeopleSoft applications:

- PeopleSoft Deal Management
- PeopleSoft Risk Management
- PeopleSoft Payables
- PeopleSoft Receivables
- PeopleSoft General Ledger

We cover integration considerations in the implementation chapters in this PeopleBook.

Supplemental information about third-party application integrations is located on the PeopleSoft Customer Connection website.

---

## PeopleSoft Cash Management Implementation

PeopleSoft Setup Manager enables you to review a list of setup tasks for your organization for the products that you are implementing. The setup tasks include the components that you must set up, listed in the order in which you must enter data into the component tables, and links to the corresponding PeopleBook documentation.

PeopleSoft Cash Management also provides component interfaces to help you load data from your existing system into PeopleSoft Cash Management tables. Use the Excel to Component Interface utility with the component interfaces to populate the tables.

This table lists all of the components that have component interfaces:

Component	Component Interfaces	References
Account (GL_ACCOUNT)	ACCOUNT_CF	See <i>See PeopleSoft 8.8 Application Fundamentals for Financial Management Solutions, Enterprise Service Automation, and Supply Chain Management PeopleBook</i> , “Defining and Using ChartFields,” Adding Account Values.
Alternate Account (ALTACCT)	ALTACCT_CF	See <i>PeopleSoft 8.8 Application Fundamentals for Financial Management Solutions, Enterprise Service Automation, and Supply Chain Management PeopleBook</i> , “Using Alternate Account”.
Operating Unit (OPERATING_UNIT)	OPER_UNIT_CF	See <i>PeopleSoft 8.8 Application Fundamentals for Financial Management Solutions, Enterprise Service Automation, and Supply Chain Management PeopleBook</i> , “Defining and Using ChartFields,” Adding Operating Unit Values.
Department (DEPARTMENT)	DEPT_CF	See <i>PeopleSoft 8.8 Application Fundamentals for Financial Management Solutions, Enterprise Service Automation, and Supply Chain Management PeopleBook</i> , “Defining and Using ChartFields,” Adding Department Values.

Component	Component Interfaces	References
Fund Code (FUND_DEFINITION)	FUND_CF	See <i>PeopleSoft 8.8 Application Fundamentals for Financial Management Solutions, Enterprise Service Automation, and Supply Chain Management PeopleBook</i> , “Defining and Using ChartFields,” Adding Fund Code Values.
Statistics Code (STATISTICS_TBL)	STATISTICS_CODE	See <i>PeopleSoft 8.8 Application Fundamentals for Financial Management Solutions, Enterprise Service Automation, and Supply Chain Management PeopleBook</i> , “Defining and Using ChartFields,” Adding Statistics Code Values.
Class Field (CLASS_PNL)	CLASS_CF	See <i>PeopleSoft 8.8 Application Fundamentals for Financial Management Solutions, Enterprise Service Automation, and Supply Chain Management PeopleBook</i> , “Defining and Using ChartFields,” Adding Class Field Values.
Budget Reference (BUDREF_PNL)	BUDGET_REF	See <i>PeopleSoft 8.8 Application Fundamentals for Financial Management Solutions, Enterprise Service Automation, and Supply Chain Management PeopleBook</i> , “Defining and Using ChartFields,” Adding Budget Reference Values.
Program Code (PROGRAM_DEFINITION)	PROGRAM_CF	See <i>PeopleSoft 8.8 Application Fundamentals for Financial Management Solutions, Enterprise Service Automation, and Supply Chain Management PeopleBook</i> , “Defining and Using ChartFields,” Adding Program Code Values.
Scenario (BD_SCENARIO)	BUDGET_SCENARIO	See <i>PeopleSoft 8.8 Application Fundamentals for Financial Management Solutions, Enterprise Service Automation, and Supply Chain Management PeopleBook</i> , “Defining and Using ChartFields,” Adding Scenario Values.

Component	Component Interfaces	References
Chartfield 1 (CHARTFIELD1)	CHARTFIELD1	See <i>PeopleSoft 8.8 Application Fundamentals for Financial Management Solutions, Enterprise Service Automation, and Supply Chain Management PeopleBook</i> , “Defining and Using ChartFields,” Adding Values for Expansion ChartFields 1, 2, and 3.
Chartfield 2 (CHARTFIELD2)	CHARTFIELD2	See <i>PeopleSoft 8.8 Application Fundamentals for Financial Management Solutions, Enterprise Service Automation, and Supply Chain Management PeopleBook</i> , “Defining and Using ChartFields,” Adding Values for Expansion ChartFields 1, 2, and 3.
Chartfield 3 (CHARTFIELD3)	CHARTFIELD3	See <i>PeopleSoft 8.8 Application Fundamentals for Financial Management Solutions, Enterprise Service Automation, and Supply Chain Management PeopleBook</i> , “Defining and Using ChartFields,” Adding Values for Expansion ChartFields 1, 2, and 3.
InterUnit Template (IU_INTER_TMPLT)	IU_INTER_TMPLT	See <i>PeopleSoft 8.8 Application Fundamentals for Financial Management Solutions, Enterprise Service Automation, and Supply Chain Management PeopleBook</i> , “Using Interunit and Intraunit Accounting and ChartField Inheritance,” Defining Interunit Templates.
IntraUnit Template (IU_INTRA_TMPLT)	IU_INTRA_TMPLT	See <i>PeopleSoft 8.8 Application Fundamentals for Financial Management Solutions, Enterprise Service Automation, and Supply Chain Management PeopleBook</i> , “Using Interunit and Intraunit Accounting and ChartField Inheritance,” Defining Intraunit Templates.
InterUnit Pair Maintenance (IU_INTER_PR_BASIC)	IU_INTER_PR_BASIC	See <i>PeopleSoft 8.8 Application Fundamentals for Financial Management Solutions, Enterprise Service Automation, and Supply Chain Management PeopleBook</i> , “Using Interunit and Intraunit Accounting and ChartField Inheritance,” Interunit Pairs.

Component	Component Interfaces	References
Ledgers for a Unit (BUSINESS_UNIT_LED)	EM_BUS_UNIT_LED	See <i>PeopleSoft 8.8 Application Fundamentals for Financial Management Solutions, Enterprise Service Automation, and Supply Chain Management PeopleBook</i> , “Setting Up Ledgers,” Defining Ledgers for a Business Unit.
Value Added Tax Code (TAX_CODE_VAT)	TAX_CODE_VAT	See <i>PeopleSoft Global Options and Reports 8.8 PeopleBook</i> , “Working with Value Added Taxes (VAT),” Defining VAT Codes Using the Value Added Tax Code Page.
VAT Accounts by Business Unit (TAX_BU_CODE_VAT)	TAX_BU_CODE_VAT	See <i>PeopleSoft General Ledger 8.8 PeopleBook</i> , “Processing Value Added Tax (VAT) Transactions in PeopleSoft General Ledger,” Setting Up General Ledger Business Unit VAT Default Options.
VAT Entity (VAT_ENTITY_ID)	VAT_ENTITY_ID	See <i>PeopleSoft Global Options and Reports 8.8 PeopleBook</i> , “Working with Value Added Taxes (VAT),” Setting Up VAT Entities.
Vat Defaults CI Component (VAT_DEF_CI)	VAT_DEF_CI	See <i>PeopleSoft Global Options and Reports 8.8 PeopleBook</i> , “Working with Value Added Taxes (VAT),” Establishing VAT Defaults.
Bank Branch Information (BANK_BRANCHPNL)	TR_BANK_BRANCH_CI	See <i>PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 8.8 PeopleBook</i> , “Setting Up Banks and Counterparties,” Defining Bank Branches.
Financial Contacts (CONTACTS)	TR_FINANCIAL_CONTACTS_CI	See <i>PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 8.8 PeopleBook</i> , “Setting Up Banks and Counterparties,” Defining Financial Contacts.
Netting Participants (NET_PARTICIPANT)	TR_NET_PARTICIPANT_CI	See <a href="#">Chapter 6, “Managing Bilateral Netting.”</a> Defining Participant Relationships, page 85.
Contact Info (CONTACT_INFO)	CONTACT	See <i>PeopleSoft Working with Customers and Orders 8.8 PeopleBook</i> , “Maintaining Contacts,” Setting Up Contacts.
General Information (CUSTOMER_GENERAL)		See <i>PeopleSoft Working with Customers and Orders 8.8 PeopleBook</i> , “Maintaining General Customer Information,” Adding General Customer Information.

Component	Component Interfaces	References
User Preferences (OPR_DEFAULT)	OPR_DEFAULT_FIN	See <i>PeopleSoft 8.8 Application Fundamentals for Financial Management Solutions, Enterprise Service Automation, and Supply Chain Management PeopleBook</i> , “Defining User Preferences,” Defining Cross-Application User Preferences.
Define Fee Code (DEFINE_FEE_CODE)	TR_DEFINE_FEE_CODE_CI	See <a href="#">Chapter 4, “Managing Fees and Account Analysis,” Defining Fee Codes, page 26.</a>
Settlement Instructions (SETTLEMENT_INSTRUC)	TR_SETTLEMENT_INSTRUCTIONS_CI	See <i>PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 8.8 PeopleBook</i> , “Setting Up Banks and Counterparties,” Defining Beneficiary Bank Information. See <i>PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 8.8 PeopleBook</i> , “Setting Up Banks and Counterparties,” Defining Beneficiary Bank Information.

## Other Sources of Information

In the planning phase of your implementation, take advantage of all PeopleSoft sources of information, including the installation guides, table-loading sequences, data models, and business process maps. A complete list of these resources is in the preface of the *PeopleSoft Application Fundamentals for FIN, ESA, and SCM 8.8 PeopleBook*, with information on where to find the most up-to-date version of each.

### See Also

*PeopleSoft 8.8 Application Fundamentals for Financial Management Solutions, Enterprise Service Automation, and Supply Chain Management PeopleBook*, “PeopleSoft Application Fundamentals PeopleBook Preface,” Additional Resources

*PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Getting Started With Bank Setup and Processing,” Other Sources of Information

*PeopleTools PeopleBook: PeopleSoft Setup Manager*

*PeopleTools PeopleBook: PeopleSoft Component Interface*

## CHAPTER 2

# Defining Cash Management Processing Options

This chapter provides an overview of the setup of PeopleSoft Cash Management tables, and discusses how to:

- Set up accounting templates and events.
- Set up bank information.
- Define business calendars.
- Define business unit options.
- Define cross-referenced currency codes and holiday list IDs.
- Define electronic funds transfer templates.
- Define facilities.
- Define fees.
- Define internal accounts.
- Define market rates.
- Define netting.
- Define position analysis.
- Define Cash Management bank statement accounting functionality.

---

## Setting Up Accounting Templates and Events

Set up accounting templates and events.

See [Chapter 9, “Managing Treasury Accounting ,” Establishing Accounting Templates, page 157.](#)

---

## Setting Up Bank Information

Set up bank information.

See *PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Setting Up Banks and Counterparties”.

## Defining Business Calendars

You define business calendars to indicate business days, non-business days, and holidays by country and year. The system uses these calendars during deal capture to ensure that cash flow payment dates are business days and also to determine cutoff dates for settlement selection and delivery.

### Page Used to Define Business Calendars

Page Name	Object Name	Navigation	Usage
Business Calendar	BUS_CALENDAR_HOL	Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Common Definitions, Calendars/Schedules, Business Calendar	Indicate business days, non-business days, and holidays for use in PeopleSoft Cash Management, Deal Management, and Risk Management processing functions.

### Defining a Business Calendar

Access the Business Calendar page.

Business Calendar page

#### Normal Business Days

Select the standard business days for this holiday list.

#### Calendar Year

The current year appears. The grid below displays the holidays for that year. To view a different year and associated holidays, enter that year and click Search. You can add other holidays in the grid as required.

## Defining Business Unit Options

To define Treasury business unit options, use the Treasury Options component (BUS\_UNIT\_OPT\_TR).

You must define default processing options (including VAT) for business units for use in PeopleSoft Cash Management, Deal Management, and Risk Management.

### Page Used to Define Business Unit Options

Page Name	Object Name	Navigation	Usage
Treasury Options	BUS_UNIT_OPT_TR	Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Business Unit Related, Treasury, Treasury Options	Establish default processing options specific to your PeopleSoft Treasury business units.
Treasury VAT Options	TRV_BU_UNIT_OPT_TR	Click Treasury VAT Options on the Treasury Options page.	Define specific PeopleSoft Treasury VAT processing options.
VAT Defaults Setup	VAT_DEFAULTS_DTL	Click VAT Defaults on the VAT Defaults Setup page.	Specify default VAT options for a business unit.

### Defining Business Unit Options

Access the Treasury Options page.

Treasury Options page

### Default Values

In this region you select workflow processing options for deals. Refer to the documentation in the PeopleSoft Deal Management PeopleBook.

See *PeopleSoft Deal Management 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Defining Deal Management Processing Options,” Defining Deal Business Unit Options.

## Accounting

**Calendar ID** Select a detail calendar for the business unit.

---

**Note.** You must define calendars for business units that you intend to “soft-close” using the PeopleSoft Cash Management Fiscal Period Closure functionality.

See [Chapter 9, “Managing Treasury Accounting ,” Maintaining Fiscal Period Closure, page 173](#).

## Outbound EDI Setup

**Internal Entity Code** Select the inbound entity code to use for business units.

**External Entity Code** Select the outbound entity code to use for counterparties.

---

**Note.** Internal and external EDI entity codes enable PeopleSoft EDI Manager to correctly map deal-specific business units and counterparties to EDI data conversion rules.

## Base Currency Revaluation

**Market Rate Index and Exchange Rate Type** Select the appropriate index for each field. The system uses these fields to calculate base currency equivalents for foreign currency amounts when accounting entries are generated from accounting templates.

## Bank Transfer Accounting Build

**Require Review** Select to force accounting transactions that use this template to be reviewed. The system assigns error-free accounting entries using this template a *Provisional* status. You can then manually finalize the entry on the Review/Approve Entries page. If this check box is cleared, the system assigns error-free accounting entries using this template a *Final* status.

**Journal Template** Select the journal template this business unit uses for its bank transfer accounting builds.

## Settlement Approvals

**Settlement Approvals and Approval Method** Select to require approval for settlements involving this business unit. In the Approval Method field, select the type of approval, either *Manual* (manual approvals) or *Workflow* (approvals based on PeopleSoft Workflow).

**Same User Select and Approve** Select to enable the same user to both select and approve settlements.

## Auto-Schedule Position Update

### Auto-Schedule Position Update

You must process a position update request for each deal to create the required records for position management, cash flows, and accounting events for your deals. If you select the check box, the system automatically processes a position update request, which creates the required records for position management and accounting, when you save an active deal. We recommend that you select this check box.

### Position Update Run Control ID

Enter the run control ID to use for the automatically created position update requests; for example, enter *AUTO-POSITION*. Specify this run control on the Business Unit Options page.

### Server Name

Specify the name of the PeopleSoft Process Scheduler server that runs position update request processes. If you leave this field blank, the system uses the Default Operating System field as specified on the System Settings page to determine which server to run the process on.

### Treasury VAT Options

Click to access the Treasury BU VAT Options page and specify default VAT options for this business unit. The Treasury VAT Options link is available only if the PeopleSoft General Ledger business unit that represents the Treasury Management business unit is linked to a VAT entity.

See [Chapter 2, “Defining Cash Management Processing Options,” Defining Business Unit Treasury VAT Options, page 11](#).

### VAT Defaults

Click to access the VAT Defaults Setup page.

The VAT Defaults Setup page is a common page used to set up VAT defaulting for all PeopleSoft applications processing VAT transactions. On this page you can define Treasury business unit defaults as applicable.

See *PeopleSoft Global Options and Reports 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Working with Value Added Taxes (VAT)”.

---

**Note.** Deals do not appear on the Position Monitor or Position Manager until a position update request is processed. We recommend that you select the Auto-Schedule Position Update check box.

---

## See Also

[Chapter 10, “Processing VAT Transactions in Treasury Management,” Prerequisites, page 179](#)

[Chapter 8, “Working with Settlements ,” page 135](#)

*PeopleSoft Deal Management 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Maintaining Deals”

*PeopleTools PeopleBook: PeopleSoft Process Scheduler*

## Defining Business Unit Treasury VAT Options

Access the VAT Options page.

**VAT Edit Msgs** (VAT edit messages) VAT edit messages are used to indicate if VAT tolerance messages are errors, warnings, or not displayed. This is a business unit-only default and applies directly to a transaction.

*Error Message:* A message displays, and you must correct the tolerance error to proceed with a transaction.

*None:* No message displays.

*Warning:* A message displays indicating a transaction exceeds tolerance settings.

**Prorate Non-Recoverable VAT** Select this check box to record non-recoverable VAT amounts to an expense account.

**Allocate Non-Recoverable VAT** Select this check box to allocate non-recoverable VAT using ChartField Inheritance logic.

---

**Note.** You can select either to allocate or prorate non-recoverable VAT transactions, but you cannot select both check boxes.

---

## Defining Cross-Referenced Currency Codes and Holiday List IDs

The system uses cross-referenced currency codes and holiday lists to determine eligible business dates for all Treasury business processes.

### Pages Used to Define Cross-Referenced Currency Codes and Holiday List IDs

Page Name	Object Name	Navigation	Usage
Currency Code - Holiday List ID Cross Reference	CUR_HOL_ID_XREF	Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Treasury, Currency/Holiday X-Ref	Associate a holiday list with a particular currency.

### Define Currency Codes and Holiday List IDs

Access the Currency Code - Holiday List ID Cross Reference page.

**Holiday List ID** Associate a holiday list ID with a specified currency code. You can also create additional currency codes and associate holiday list IDs to them.

---

## Defining Electronic Funds Transfer Templates

Define electronic fund transfer templates.

See [Chapter 7, “Transferring Funds ,” Creating and Approving Funds Transfer Templates, page 112.](#)

---

## Defining Facilities

A *facility* is a financial arrangement with a counterparty under which an established monetary amount is available for transactions. Similar to a contract, a facility contains pertinent information about the arrangement, such as default settlement instructions, term, and review date.

To set up a facility, you define the types of attributes tracked and then establish the facility itself. You record fees that are associated with the facility by entering them online.

### See Also

*PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Managing Facilities”

---

## Defining Fees

Define fees.

See [Chapter 4, “Managing Fees and Account Analysis,” Setting Up Fees Structures, page 25](#).

---

## Defining Internal Accounts

Define internal bank accounts.

See *PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Setting Up External, Internal, and Netting Accounts,” Defining Internal Account Information.

---

## Defining Market Rates

In addition to the PeopleSoft Common Definitions pages for defining and maintaining market rate data, PeopleSoft Cash Management, PeopleSoft Deal Management, and PeopleSoft Risk Management use these additional market rate maintenance pages. These market rate pages enable you to specify criteria by which to retrieve and update multiple market rate definitions.

This section discusses how to:

- Define market and exchange code information.
- Define market rates.
- View and add market rate information.
- Edit rate variance information.
- Define rate reset codes.

## See Also

*PeopleSoft Risk Management 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Defining Risk Management Processing Options,” Defining Market Risk Scenario Sets

*PeopleSoft Risk Management 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Reevaluating Deals”

## Pages Used to Define Market Rates

Page Name	Object Name	Navigation	Usage
Market/Exchange Code	TRX_EXCHANGE_CD	Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Treasury, Market/Exchange Codes	Define market and exchange information for a code.
Market Rates	RT_RATE_TBL	Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Treasury, Market Rates	Specify criteria by which to review rates and to add or update rates.
Market Rates - Market Rate	RT_RATE_PNL	Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Common Definitions, Market Rates. Click Edit on the Market Rates page.	View details of a market rate, add a new market rate, and view exchange rate detail information.
Rate Definition	RT_RATE_DEF_SEC	Click Rate Definition on the Market Rates - Market Rates page	Edit the maximum variance and error type information.
Exchange Rate Detail	EXCH_RT_DTL	 Click Exchange Rate Detail on the Market Rates - Market Rates page.	View exchange rate detail information.
Rate Reset Codes	TRX_RT_RESET_CD	Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Treasury, Rate Reset Codes	Define and associate a holiday list ID to a rate reset code.

## Defining Market Rate and Exchange Code Information

Access the Market/Exchange Code page.

## Defining Market Rates

Access the Market Rates page.

## Market Rates

Index: BBFX Bloomberg FX Rates Exchange Rate

**Selection Criteria**

Term	Rate Type	From Cur	To Cur	<input type="checkbox"/> Include History	<a href="#">Search</a>	<a href="#">Add New Market Rate</a>
------	-----------	----------	--------	--	------------------------	-------------------------------------

**Market Rates**

Term	Rate Type	From Cur	To Cur	Eff Date	<a href="#">Rate</a>	<a href="#">Edit</a>	<a href="#">Rate Defn</a>	<a href="#">Rate Detail</a>
------	-----------	----------	--------	----------	----------------------	----------------------	---------------------------	-----------------------------

<a href="#">Customize</a>   <a href="#">Find</a>								
First  1-891 of 891  Last								
0	MID	ADP	CAD	04/24/1998	0.00943592			
0	MID	ADP	USD	04/24/1998	152.11000000			
0	MID	AED	CAD	04/24/1998	0.39077001			
0	MID	AED	USD	04/24/1998	3.67300000			
0	MID	AFA	CAD	04/24/1998	0.00030217			
0	MID	AFA	USD	04/24/1998	4750.00000000			
0	MID	ALL	CAD	04/24/1998	0.00909860			
0	MID	ALL	USD	04/24/1998	157.75000000			
0	MID	ANG	CAD	04/24/1998	0.80748050			
0	MID	ANG	USD	04/24/1998	1.77750000			
0	MID	AOK	USD	04/24/1998	0.00000508			

Market Rates page

**Note.** The appearance of this page varies depending on the market rate category.

### Selection Criteria

Enter the criteria by which to retrieve existing market rate definitions.

<b>Term</b>	Specify a term code, indicating the length of time the rate is effective.
<b>Rate Type</b>	Select a market rate or exchange rate type.
<b>From Cur</b> (from currency) and <b>To Cur</b> (to currency)	Select the original and conversion currencies of the market rate.
<b>Include History</b>	Select to view market rate history for returned results.
<b>Add New Market Rate</b>	Click to access the Market Rates detail page and add a new rate type. The market rate definition (and, in the case of exchange rates, the currency quotation method for the from currency and to currency) must already exist.

### Market Rates



Click the Edit button to access the Market Rates - Market Rate page, and edit effective date and rate information.



Click the Rate Defn (rate definition) button to access the Rate Definition page, and view information on the rate's maximum variance, error type, and day count basis.



Click the Rate Detail button to access the Exchange Rate Detail page, and view exchange rate detail information.

## Viewing and Adding Market Rate Information

Access the Market Rates - Market Rate page.

Market Rates

### Market Rate

<b>Index:</b>	BBFX	Bloomberg FX Rates	<a href="#">Rate Definition</a>
<b>Rate Category:</b>		Exchange Rate	
<b>Rate Type:</b>	MID	Mid Rate	
<b>Term:</b>	0		
<b>From Currency Code:</b>	ADP	Andorran Peseta	
<b>To Currency Code:</b>	CAD	Canadian Dollar	

**Rate** [Find](#) | [View All](#) [First](#) [1 of 1](#) [Last](#)

Effective Date:	*Rate:	
04/24/1998	0.00943592	

Market Rates - Market Rate page

#### Rate Definition

Click to access the Rate Definition page, and edit variance and error type information for the rate definition.



Click the Exchange Rate Detail button to access the Exchange Rate Detail page, and view rate information.

## Editing Rate Variance Information

Access the Rate Definition page.

**Maximum Variance**

The variance value validates the rates read from the market rate loader process. The system compares the prior historical rate to the one read and ensures that it's within a specified variance. If not, you are alerted with the specified error type. Enter a new Maximum Variance, and specify an Error Type of *None*, *Stop*, or *Warning*.

## Defining Rates Reset Codes

Access the Rates Reset Codes page.

---

## Defining Netting

Define netting information.

See [Chapter 6, “Managing Bilateral Netting,” Setting Up Bilateral Nets, page 82](#).

---

## Defining Position Analysis

Define trees and positions.

See [Chapter 5, “Defining Cash Positions ,” Setting Up Trees and Positions , page 42](#).

---

## Defining Cash Management Bank Statement Accounting Functionality

This section discusses how to define bank statement accounting.

The PeopleSoft Cash Management Bank Statement Accounting (BSA) functionality integrates with the PeopleSoft Banks reconciliation functionality. BSA adds another layer of reconciliation functionality, acting as a second filter on NTF transactions.

Bank statement accounting functionality reduces the number of reconciliation exceptions you need to resolve. During automatic reconciliation processing, the system searches for reconciliation exceptions that match predefined rules, then automatically generates system side accounting entries to reconcile the exceptions, and sets the exceptions' reconciliation status from unreconciled (*UNR*) to reconciled (*REC*).

### See Also

*PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Setting Up Reconciliation,” Setting Up Cash Management Bank Statement Accounting Functionality



## CHAPTER 3

# Navigating in Treasury Management

This chapter discusses how to navigate in Treasury Management.

## Navigating in Treasury Management

Treasury Management provides custom navigation pages that contain groupings of folders that support a specific business process, task, or user role.

---

**Note.** In addition to the Treasury Management custom navigation pages, PeopleSoft provides menu navigation and standard navigation pages.

---

**Note.** The Treasury Management Processing Center and the Treasury Management Setup Center are individual navigation center pages that can also be accessed from the main Treasury Management Center. As they are already documented below as a navigation center page, they are not included in the Treasury Management Center linked page listing.

---

### See Also

*PeopleTools PeopleBook: Using PeopleSoft Applications*

## Pages Used to Navigate in Treasury Management

This table lists the Custom Navigation pages that are used to navigate in Treasury Management:

Page Name	Navigation	Usage
Treasury Management Center	Treasury Management Center	Access primary Treasury Management setup and process pages from a central location. For easier retrieval, you can save this page in the My Favorites folder on the portal navigation menu.
Accounting Summary	Click Accounting Summary.	Access the Accounting Summary page to search accounting information and review results, displayed by accounting event line.

Page Name	Navigation	Usage
Bank Account Manager	Click Bank Account Manager.	Access the Bank Account Manager page to review and manage bank account information by functional clusters.
Collateral Summary	Click Collateral Summary.	Access the Collateral Summary page to search for collateral items and return results.
Hedge Group Manager	Click Hedge Group Manager.	Access the Hedge Group Manager page to combine various hedges into collections of “favorites.”
Letters of Credit Summary	Click Letters of Credit Summary.	Access the Letters of Credit Summary page to review summarized information for multiple letters of credit.
Portfolio Manager	Click Portfolio Manager.	Access the Portfolio Manager page to combine various deals into portfolio collections.
Position Manager	Click Position Manager.	Access the Position Manager page to create and manage position worksheets from one central location.
Reconciliation Manager	Click Reconciliation Manager.	Access the Reconciliation Manager page to reconcile bank data and manage exceptions from one central location.
Settlement Manager	Click Settlement Manager.	Access the Settlement Manager page to view settlement and exposure information and manage treasury payments from a central location.
Treasury Processing Center	Treasury Management Processing Center	Access common Treasury Management business process pages from a central location. For easier retrieval, you can save this page in the My Favorites folder on the portal navigation menu.
Accounting	Click Accounting.	Access the Automated Accounting page and run the Automated Accounting Application Engine process (TRA_ACCTG_REQ).
Analytics	Click Analytics.	Access PeopleSoft Risk Management functions and run the various analytical processes.
Bank Statement Processing	Click Bank Statement Processing.	Access pages to import, create, and manage your bank statement activities.

Page Name	Navigation	Usage
Deals	Click Deals.	Access pages to perform deal maintenance activities.
Deal Confirmations	Click Deal Confirmations.	Access pages to perform deal inbound and outbound confirmations.
Funds Transfer	Click Funds Transfer.	Access pages to process various funds transfer types.
Hedges	Click Hedges.	Access the Cumulative Offset Inquiry page and review hedge information.
In-House Bank Interest Accrual	Click In-House Bank Interest Accrual.	Access pages to perform in-house banking interest accrual activities.
Position Management	Click Position Management.	Access pages to perform manual and automatic cash position activities.
Settlement Management	Click Settlement Management.	Access pages to process settlements and bilateral nets.
Treasury Management Setup Center	Treasury Management Setup Center	Access links, grouped by logical function, to setup pages for Treasury Management products. For easier retrieval, you can save this page in the My Favorites folder on the portal navigation menu.
Accounting	Click Accounting.	Access pages to setup accounting templates and events.
Analytics	Click Analytics.	Access pages to define analytic calculations, functions, and vendor information used in risk analysis.
Banks	Click Banks.	Access pages to setup comprehensive bank information (such as bank, bank account, and bank branch information).
Bank Integration	Click Bank Integration.	Access pages to define and manage integration information between PeopleSoft and your banks, for your bank statement and payment activities.
Business Unit Related	Click Business Unit Related.	Access the Treasury Options page and specify Treasury Management-specific options for your business units.
Deals/Instrument Types	Click Deals/Instrument Types.	Access pages to setup deal instrument types and instrument templates, and define deal inbound confirmation validation rules.

Page Name	Navigation	Usage
Facilities	Click Facilities.	Access pages to setup and update facility information.
Fees	Click Fees.	Access pages to setup fee codes, tables, and structures.
Funds Transfer	Click Funds Transfer.	Access pages to setup and approve funds transfer templates.
Hedges	Click Hedges.	Access pages to setup hedge groups, item sources, and strategies.
Position Worksheet	Click Position Worksheet.	Access pages to setup field types, position sources, SQL, and time spans for position worksheets.
Rates	Click Rates.	Access pages to setup exchange rate, market rates, rate reset codes, and currency/holiday cross-reference information.
Settlements/Netting	Click Settlements/Netting.	Access pages to setup bilateral netting rules, participants, and contracts.

## CHAPTER 4

# Managing Fees and Account Analysis

This chapter provides an overview of bank fees and account analysis and describes how to:

- Set up fee structures.
- Compare fee structures.
- Perform account analysis.
- Use the Account Analysis Manager.
- Create fee entries.

---

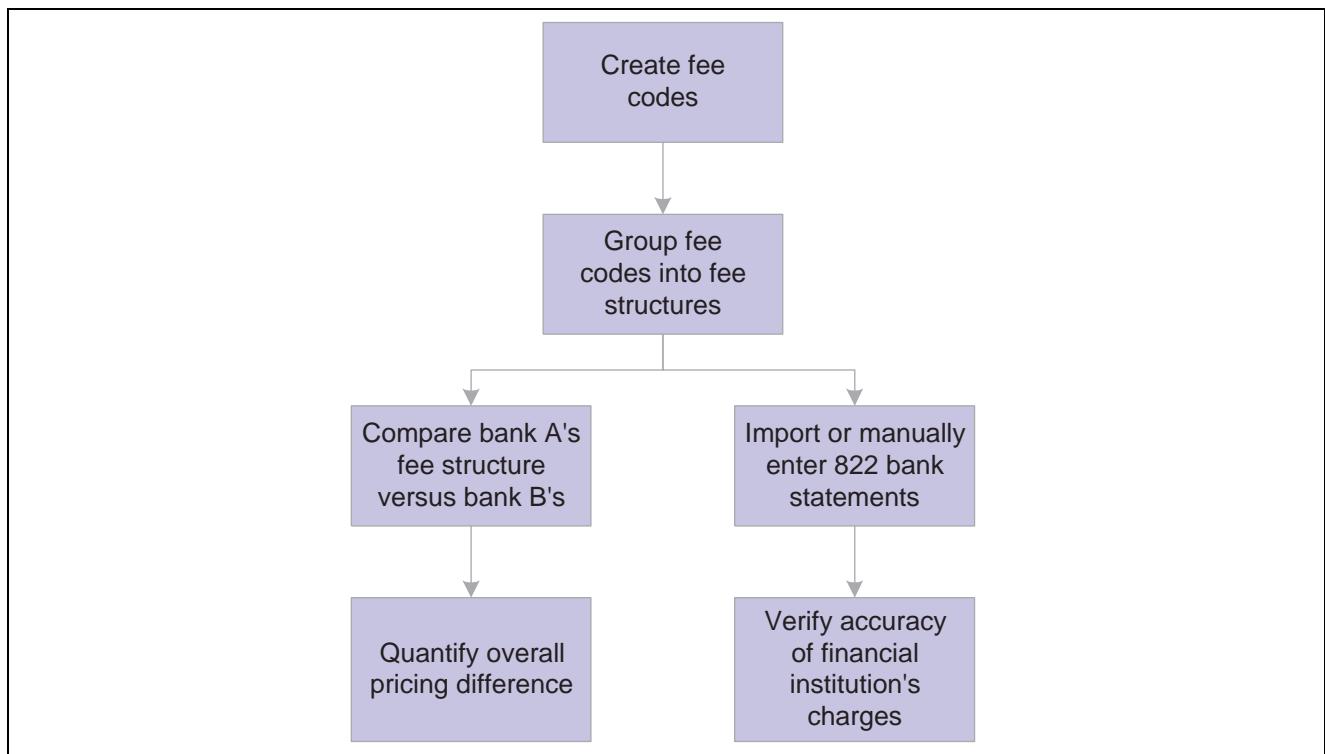
## Understanding Managing Fees and Account Analysis

With the Account Analysis feature, you can configure fee codes and fee structures for use in bank fee comparisons and statement analyses.

Account analysis enables you to define how bank fees are calculated for your enterprise and organizes them into fee structures. A fee structure enables you to group, in one place, all the fees that a particular bank charges. You can use fee types that match the standards documented in *Treasury Management Association (TMA) Guide to Account Analysis and Service Codes*, both published by the Association for Financial Professionals (AFP)—for example, tiered pricing, base fee, or min/max (minimum/maximum) fees.

By defining and analyzing this data, you can reduce your fee expenses in two ways:

- Comparing fees for up to five banks, and determining which bank has the best fee structure for your requirements.
- Catching bank charge errors by running an 822 bank statement against the data.



Overview of bank account fee analysis

## Common Elements in this Chapter

<b>Analysis Start Date</b> and <b>Analysis End Date</b>	Defines the calendar period that the system analyzes. When running an account analysis, the system includes all the activities between these two dates in the analysis.
<b>Bank Code</b>	Displays the identifier code for a specific bank.
<b>Fee Code</b>	Displays the identifier code for a specific fee.
<b>Fee Structure Code</b>	Displays the identifier code for a specific fee structure.
<b>Period Beginning</b> and <b>Period Ending</b>	Defines the beginning and ending dates for a specified time period.
<b>Day Count Basis</b>	<p>Select from the following options:</p> <p><b>30/360:</b> Assumes that a year consists of twelve months with an equal length of 30 days. A special rule applies when dealing with the end of a month.</p> <p><b>30E/360:</b> Assumes that a year consists of twelve months with an equal length of 30 days. Also known as Euro 30/360.</p> <p><b>Actual/360:</b> Assumes that a year consists of 360 days but the months are counted as actual calendar days.</p>

*Actual/365:* Assumes that a year consists of 365 days but the months are counted as actual calendar days.

*Actual/Actual:* Assumes that the number of days between two dates is the actual number of calendar days.

---

## Setting Up Fees Structures

To define fee codes, use the Fee Codes component (DEFINE\_FEE\_CODE).

This section discusses how to:

1. Create fee transaction tables.
2. Define fee codes.
3. (Optional) Enter SQL Where Criteria.
4. Set up fee structures.
5. Define fee structures.
6. (Optional) Edit base fee calculations.

## Pages Used to Setup Fee Structure

Page Name	Object Name	Navigation	Usage
Fee Transaction Tables	FA_FEE_TRAN_PNL	Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Treasury, Fee Transaction Tables	Set up transaction tables.
Fee Code Definition	FA_FEE_CD_PNL	Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Treasury, Fee Codes	Set up fee codes.
SQL Where Criteria	FA_FEE_SQLWHERE_SP	Click Where Clause on the Fee Code Definition page.	Establish criteria for the fee analysis metric.
Fee Structures - Structure Accounts	FA_FEE_ACCT	Banking, Account Analysis, Fee Structures	Set up fee structures.
Fee Structures - Structure Definition	FA_FEE_STRUCT	Select the Structure Definition tab on the Structure Accounts page.	Define fee structures.
Fee Calculation Type - Fee Structure	FA_FEE_STRUCT_SEC	Click Fee Definition on the Fee Structure Definition page.	Edit the base fee calculation for certain fee calculation types.

## Creating Fee Transaction Tables

Access the Fee Transaction Tables page.

Define the names of the transaction tables that you will use with your fee codes. The transaction tables contain the underlying transactions, which the system references when processing fees. After you save the transaction tables, you can reference the table when you define each fee code.

## Defining Fee Codes

Access the Fee Code Definition page.

Fee Code Definition page

**Description** Create both a description and fee code and that matches the TMA TS 822 or that matches your financial counterparty account analysis standards.

**Code Seq Num** (code sequence number) Assign a fee code to determine the order in which the fee codes appear on your account analysis screens.

### Fee Type

Specify whether this fee type applies to transactions involving a Letter of Credit, Deal Fee, Facility Fee, or EFT Fee. You can select multiple options.

### Fee Analysis Metric SQL

Define how the fee metrics will be tracked in your system.

**Fee Validation Information** If the fee can be tracked in your system, select the check box. In certain circumstances, you may not want to validate all fees. In this case, leave the check box clear.

**Transaction Table** Reference the fee validation information to a fee transaction table (defined in the prior section). After you save this value, click the Transaction Tables button to view the specific table definition.

**Transaction Date Field** Select the date type field name used to determine the fee (for example, *ACCOUNTING\_DT* = accounting date).

**Aggregate Type**

Select *Count*, *Avg* (average), *Min* (minimum), *Max* (maximum), or *Sum*. The available aggregate fields to which the aggregate parameters can be applied are prompted for you from the selected transaction table.

After selecting the Aggregate Field, click the Where Clause button to select operators and describe the value that the Aggregate Field must match.

**Accounting Treatment**

Define how the accounting process handles bank fees.

**Account for Fee**

Selecting this check box determines if a fee may be expensed or amortized. If a fee is amortized, accounting templates for booking the fee and amortization of the fee are required. If a fee is expensed, it may not be amortized and only the template for booking the expense is required.

**Interest Basis Override**

Fees may be amortized or accrued on various day count basis. Select this check box to enable modification of the Day Count Basis type on the Fee Entry page when creating a fee. If not selected, the Day Count Basis type on the Fee Entry page automatically defaults to the fee set up information, and cannot be modified.

**Override Template on Fee Panel**

Select this check box to allow editing of the Template field on the Fee Entry page.

**VAT Applicable Fee**

If this fee code is VAT applicable, select the check box, and specify the appropriate Expense Template. All VAT transactions recorded in Treasury Management are assumed to be transactions on services, not transactions on goods. When you create a VAT-applicable fee, the Physical Nature field displays *Services*.

**Day Count Basis**

Select from the following:

*30/360*: Assumes that a year consists of 12 months with an equal length of 30 days. A special rule applies when dealing with the end of a month.

*30E/360*: Assumes that a year consists of 12 months with an equal length of 30 days. Also known as Euro 30/360.

---

**Note.** The difference between the *30/360* calculation and the *30E/360* calculation occurs when a period ends on the 31st, but did not start on the 30th or 31st. In this case, the *30/360* calculation uses the 31st day as equal to 31, while the *30E/360* calculation uses the 31st day as equal to 30. For example, using the *30/360* calculation, the period starting December 1 and ending December 31 contains 30 days. However, using the *30E/360* calculation, the same December time period contains only 29 days.

---

*Actual/360*: Assumes that a year consists of 360 days but the months are counted as actual calendar days.

*Actual/365*: Assumes that a year consists of 365 days but the months are counted as actual calendar days.

**Actual/Actual:** Assumes that the number of days between two dates is the actual number of calendar days.

#### Amortized

If you opt to amortize the fee over time, select both an Expense Template and Accrual Template.

#### Expensed

If you opt to only expense the fee, select an appropriate expense template value.

#### See Also

[Chapter 4, “Managing Fees and Account Analysis,” Creating Fee Transaction Tables, page 25](#)

[Chapter 4, “Managing Fees and Account Analysis,” Validating Account Analysis Information, page 36](#)

[Chapter 10, “Processing VAT Transactions in Treasury Management,” Creating VAT Transactions for Fees, page 189](#)

## Entering SQL Where Criteria

Access the SQL Where Criteria page

Select operators and describe the *Value* that the Aggregate Field must match to pass the fee analysis. When you enter multiple criteria lines, a logical *and* is implied.

## Setting Up Fee Structures

Access the Fee Structures - Structure Accounts page.

Accounts in Fee Structure			
Bank Account	Bank Account #	Account Description	Currency
YCHK	555556666	JPY Denom Checking	JPY

Fee Structures - Structure Accounts page

The fee structure contains two pieces:

- Account information. Each structure is defined according to the bank and the account to which the fee structure will be charged.
- Accounts in the fee structure, and their associated currency.

## Fee Structure Accounts

**Charge to Bank Account** Select a bank account to record any fees charged to this fee structure.

### Accounts in Fee Structure

Enter the bank account or accounts that are associated with a particular fee structure.

## Defining Fee Structures

Access the Fee Structures - Structure Definition page.

Fee Structures Definition		Customize   Find   View All    First  1-6 of 8  Last		
Fee Code	Description	*Fee Calculation Type	Fee Definition	Validate Fee
000000	Ledger Bal-Avg Net	Total/Balance	Fee Definition <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
000010	Collected Bal-Avg Net	Total/Balance	Fee Definition <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
000120	Adjusted Earnings Allow Rate	Total/Balance	Fee Definition <input type="checkbox"/>	
010000	DDA Maint	Flat Fee	Fee Definition <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
100000	Brnch Dep	Flat Fee	Fee Definition <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
150100	Checks Pd-Reg	Tiered Price	Fee Definition <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	

Fee Structures - Structure Definition page

### Fee Calculation Type

Select one of the following values:

**Base Fee:** Fee that is charged in addition to the unit price when one or more units of the service are provided. For example, a base fee of USD 10.00 is charged, plus USD 0.50 per unit.

**Flat Fee:** Fixed fee that is charged for service provided that is not directly tied to the volume of the service. For example, Balance Reporting is USD 50.00 per month, regardless of the number of reporting files created during the month.

**Minimum Fee:** Lowest fee that is possible for the service provided; for example, USD 1.00 per unit with a USD 5.00 minimum. The minimum fee is charged even if the unit count is less than 5.

**Maximum Fee:** Highest fee that is possible for the service provided; for example, USD 1.00 per unit, with a USD 50.00 maximum. The maximum fee is charged even if the unit count exceeds 50.

**Rate Based Charge:** This fee is calculated using a balance and an annual percentage rate. For example, an overdraft fee is calculated as the Average Negative Ledger Balance x 12% x 30/365.

*Discounted Price:* This fee is calculated using a price that is less than the standard price for the service provided. For example, Customer A is charged USD 0.90 per unit, instead of the standard USD 1.00 per unit.

*Threshold Price:* The total volume determines the unit price for the service. For example, if the volume is 1,000 or less, the price is USD 0.10 per unit; if the volume is more than 1,000, the price is USD 0.09 per unit.

*Tiered Pricing:* The price for the service is determined by the tiering structure and the total volume. The volume is broken down into as many tiers as necessary, and a different price is used to calculate the fee for each tier. For example, for the first 1,000 items, the price is USD .10 per unit; for more than 1,000 items, the price is USD .09 per unit.

**Fee Definition**

Depending on the Fee Calculation Type, you can click to further define the metrics of the fee on the Fee Structure page.

**Validate Fee**

Select this check box to validate the particular fee code against both the cost and volume as defined in the fee structure and the volume as defined in the fee code setup and fee transaction tables.

## Editing Base Fee Calculations

Access the Fee Calculation Type – Fee Structure page.

The fee calculation type must have an editable fee definition to access this page. Enter a new base fee, expressed as a decimal, for fee calculation.

---

## Comparing Fee Structures

This section discusses how to compare fee structures.

Use these pages in this section to compare them with each other and to analyze the results. You can compare as few as two or as many as five fee structures at one time. You can also create multiple comparison scenarios and save them for future use. If the underlying structure changes, you can rerun the saved comparison and view the new results.

## Pages Used to Compare Fee Structures

Page Name	Object Name	Navigation	Usage
Fee Structure Comparison	FA_CHARGE_COMP	Banking, Account Analysis, Fee Structure Comparison	Compare different fee structures that are applied to the same account, and also create and save multiple comparison scenarios for future use
Fee Structure Comparison Results	FA_CHARGE_RSLTS	Click Compare Fee Structures on the Fee Structure Comparison page.	Analyze fee structures' comparison. The page also displays the optimal fee structure choice.

## Comparing Fee Structures

Access the Fee Structure Comparison page.

To compare fee structures:

1. Enter up to five Fee Structure Codes for comparison in the Fee Structures group box.
2. Click Compare Fee Structures.
3. The Fee Structure Comparison Results page appears. Each fee structure you selected on the Fee Structure Comparison page is calculated and displayed. The fee structure of optimal choice, based on the comparison of fees, is identified to the right of the *Guide to Account Analysis* field. A Charge Difference column appears on the page only if you are comparing two fee structures.

---

## Performing Account Analysis

This section discusses how to:

- Manually create statements.
- Automatically import statement information.
- Validate account analysis information.

Once bank fee codes and structures have been set up, you can perform account analysis on your bank statements to verify fee charges and catch potential errors. 822 statements can be entered either manually or automatically imported using PeopleSoft Banks functionality. You use the Account Analysis page pages to enter bank statement balance, service, and rate information, as well as balance adjustments and service adjustments, where necessary. After entering a statement, you can validate that statement to ensure correct volumes, balances, and charges. This should help decrease your research time into statement exceptions.

### See Also

*PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Setting Up Electronic Banking”

## Common Elements in this Section

**Adjustment Date** Displays the balance adjustment or service charge adjustment entry date.

**Fee Code** Displays the identifier code for the specified fee.

**Pay Method** If you leave the Pay Method field blank, the system applies the charge to the balance compensable service charges.

*F*: Free (no charge)

*N*: Non balance compensable

*W*: Waived

*X*: Not assessed through analysis

**Service Charge or Service Charge Amount** Displays the service charges assessed to your account by the bank.

## Pages Used to Perform Account Analysis

Page Name	Object Name	Navigation	Usage
Enter Fee Statements - Information	FA_BNK_STMT_HDR	Banking, Bank Statements, Enter Fee Statements Select the Information tab.	Enter statement and analysis date information, and select a statement method. You can also view bank contacts.
Enter Fee Statements - Rates	FA_BNK_STMT_RATE	Banking, Bank Statements, Enter Fee Statements Select the Rates tab.	Enter rate information for statement fee codes
Enter Fee Statements - Balance Compensation	FA_BNK_STMT_ANYL	Banking, Bank Statements, Enter Fee Statements Select the Balance Compensation tab.	Enter balances, earnings and other totals.
Enter Fee Statements - Balance Adjustments	FA_BNK_STMT_BADJ	Banking, Bank Statements, Enter Fee Statements Select the Balance Adjustments tab.	Enter balance adjustment information.
Enter Fee Statements - Service Charges	FA_BNK_STMT_SRVC	Banking, Bank Statements, Enter Fee Statements Select the Service Charges tab.	Enter statement service charge information.
Enter Fee Statements - Service Adjustments	FA_BNK_STMT_SADJ	Banking, Bank Statements, Enter Fee Statements Select the Service Adjustments tab.	Enter data about the adjustment of service charges.
Import Bank Statements	BSP_IMPORT	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Banking, Bank Statements, Import Bank Statements</li> <li>Click Import Bank Statements on the Account Analysis Manager page.</li> </ul>	Submit an electronic request for bank statement information.
Account Analysis Validation	FA_BNK_STMT_VALID	Banking, Account Analysis, Account Analysis Validation	Validate a statement against a fee structure.

## Manually Creating Statements

This section discusses how to manually create statements:

1. Enter general statement information.
2. Enter statement rate information.
3. Enter balance compensation information.
4. Enter balance adjustment information.
5. Enter service charge information.
6. Enter service adjustment information.

## Entering General Statement Information

Access the Information page.

**Statement Date** Enter the date the statement is created or imported.

**Settlement Method** Select *Debit* or *Invoice*.

### Bank Contacts

This information is associated with the Bank ID and Account #. The fields display the information you entered on the Financial Contacts page.

## Entering Statement Rate Information

Access the Rates page.

**Rate Date** Enter the effective date for the Rate.

**Rate** Enter a rate in decimal format. Rates can be any type, such as earnings rates for the current and next period, or reserve rates.

**Multiplier** Specify a service multiplier, in decimal format.

**Days/Period** Enter the number of days in the analysis period, generally 30 or 31.

**Days/Year** Enter the number of days in the year, generally 365 or 366.

## Entering Balance Compensation Information

Access the Balance Compensation Information.

You enter balances, earnings allowance, and service charge summary information for a specified account on this page.

**Balance Amount** Enter the final balance amount for the indicated Fee Code from the 822 Statement.

## Entering Balance Adjustment Information

Access the Balance Adjustments page.

You can correct balance information for a specific account number.

**Transaction Amount** Enter the adjustment transaction amount.

**Days** Indicates the number of days the balance adjustment is outstanding (for example, \$10,000 for 5 days)

**Rate** Displays the adjustment rate expressed as a decimal.

**Earnings allow Adjustment** Enter the actual dollar amount being charged or reimbursed to the account by the bank.

## Entering Service Charge Information

Access the Service Charges page.

Enter service charges from the bank account analysis statement on this page.

### Price ID

Refers to the fee calculation type. Select from the following:

*B* (Base Fee): Fee that is charged in addition to the unit price when one or more units of the service are provided. For example, a base fee of USD 10.00 is charged, plus USD 0.50 per unit.

*F* (Flat Fee): Fixed fee that is charged for service provided that is not directly tied to the volume of the service. For example, balance reporting is USD 50.00 per month, regardless of the number of reporting files created during the month.

*M* (Minimum Fee): Lowest fee that is possible for the service provided; for example, USD 1.00 per unit with a USD 5.00 minimum. The minimum fee is charged even if the unit count is less than 5.

*X* (Maximum Fee): Highest fee that is possible for the service provided; for example, USD 1.00 per unit, with a USD 50.00 maximum. The maximum fee is charged even if the unit count exceeds 50.

*R* (Rate Based Charge): This fee is calculated using a balance and an annual percentage rate. For example, an overdraft fee is calculated as the average negative ledger balance  $\times$  12%  $\times$  30/365.

*D* (Discounted Price): This fee is calculated using a price that is less than the standard price for the service provided. For example, customer A is charged USD 0.90 per unit, instead of the standard USD 1.00 per unit.

*H* (Threshold Price): The total volume determines the unit price for the service. For example, if the volume is 1,000 or less, the price is USD 0.10 per unit; if the volume is more than 1,000, the price is USD 0.09 per unit.

*T* (Tiered Pricing): The price for the service is determined by the tiering structure and the total volume. The volume is broken down into as many tiers as necessary, and a different price is used to calculate the fee for each tier. For example, for the first 1,000 items, the price is USD .10 per unit; for more than 1,000 items, the price is USD .09 per unit.

### Unit Price

Enter the unit price per fee item.

### Count

Enter the number of statement items for each fee code.

### Balance Equivalent

Enter the account's balance equivalent, as defined by the bank.

---

**Note.** If you use *Flat Fee* for the Price ID, the service charge equals the unit price. If you want the service charge to equal the unit price multiplied by the count, you must use *Tiered Price* for the Price ID.

---

## Entering Service Adjustment Information

Access the Service Adjustments page.

## Automatically Importing Statement Information

Use PeopleSoft Banks functionality to automatically import bank statement data from your financial institution to the account analysis application tables. Once the data is in the system, you can view and edit statement information on the Enter Fee Statements - Balance Adjustment and Enter Fee Statements - Service Adjustment pages.

### See Also

[Chapter 4, “Managing Fees and Account Analysis.” Entering Service Charge Information, page 35](#)

[Chapter 4, “Managing Fees and Account Analysis.” Entering Service Adjustment Information, page 35](#)

*PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Setting Up Electronic Banking”

*PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Receiving and Updating Bank Statements”

## Validating Account Analysis Information

Access the Account Analysis Validation page.

<b>Fee Structure Code</b>	Select a fee structure code and click the Validate button. All exceptions, where the system does not match your bank statement, display in the Fee Exceptions grid. The types of exceptions appear according to column heading. The grid will indicate what type of exception was encountered and the amount of the discrepancy
<b>Count Variance</b>	Displays the difference between the Bank Item Count and your organization’s Item Count.

---

## Using the Account Analysis Manager

This section discusses using the Account Analysis Manager. You can examine your fee activity on an ad hoc basis for particular fee structures, for historical or current information.

### Page Used for the Account Analysis Manager

Page Name	Object Name	Navigation	Usage
Account Analysis Manager	FA_STMT_INQ_PNL	Banking, Account Analysis, Account Analysis Manager	Review fee activity on an ad hoc basis and perform other bank fee and account analysis tasks from a central location.

## Using the Account Analysis Manager

Access the Account Analysis Manager page.

Your search results appear in the Account Analysis Activity grid.

<b>Validate Statement</b>	Click to access the Account Analysis Validation page and validate account analysis.
<b>Compare Fees</b>	Click to access the Fee Structure page and compare two to five fee structures.
<b>Edit Analysis Statement</b>	Click to access the Enter Fee Statements page and modify a specific account analysis statement.
<b>Load Analysis Statement</b>	Click to access the Import Bank Statement page and request electronic transmission of bank statement information.

### See Also

[Chapter 4, “Managing Fees and Account Analysis,” Comparing Fee Structures, page 30](#)

[Chapter 4, “Managing Fees and Account Analysis,” Performing Account Analysis, page 31](#)

[Chapter 4, “Managing Fees and Account Analysis,” Validating Account Analysis Information, page 36](#)

[Chapter 4, “Managing Fees and Account Analysis,” Automatically Importing Statement Information, page 36](#)

---

## Creating Fee Entries

This section discusses how to:

- Create fee entries.
- Create external transactions fee entries.

After establishing fee codes and structures, you can create fee entries for both delivered PeopleSoft fee sources and miscellaneous fee entries to track these expenditures. In addition, if you have enabled VAT (value added tax) processing in Treasury Management, the system automatically calculates, processes, and tracks VAT amounts for VAT–applicable fee entries.

### See Also

[Chapter 10, “Processing VAT Transactions in Treasury Management,” Creating VAT Transactions for Fees, page 189](#)

## Pages Used to Create Fee Entries

Page Name	Object Name	Navigation	Usage
Enter Fees	FEE_GENERATOR_PNL	Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, Enter Fees	Create fees for deal, facility, EFT, and letter of credit sources.
External Transactions	BNK_RCN_TRAN_UPDT	Banking, Reconcile Statements, External Transactions	Create miscellaneous external fee entries.

## Creating Fee Entries

Access the Enter Fees page.

**Enter Fees**

<b>Business Unit:</b>	US001	<b>Source Code:</b>	E Deal Fees	<b>Source ID:</b>	TRSID1																		
<a href="#">Find</a>   <a href="#">View All</a> <span style="margin-left: 10px;">First</span> <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 0 2px;">1</span> of 1 <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 0 2px;">Last</span>																							
<b>Fee Information</b> <table border="0" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 5%;">Seq</td> <td style="width: 15%;"><b>*Bank Code</b></td> <td style="width: 15%;"><b>*Account</b></td> <td style="width: 15%;"><b>*Currency</b></td> <td style="width: 15%;"><b>*Fee Code</b></td> <td style="width: 15%;"><b>*Fee Amount</b></td> <td style="width: 15%;"><b>Day Count Basis</b></td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>USBNK</td> <td>CHCK</td> <td>USD</td> <td>350300</td> <td>15.00</td> <td>Act/Actual</td> </tr> </table>						Seq	<b>*Bank Code</b>	<b>*Account</b>	<b>*Currency</b>	<b>*Fee Code</b>	<b>*Fee Amount</b>	<b>Day Count Basis</b>	1	USBNK	CHCK	USD	350300	15.00	Act/Actual				
Seq	<b>*Bank Code</b>	<b>*Account</b>	<b>*Currency</b>	<b>*Fee Code</b>	<b>*Fee Amount</b>	<b>Day Count Basis</b>																	
1	USBNK	CHCK	USD	350300	15.00	Act/Actual																	
<b>Payment Information</b> <table border="0" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 33%;"><b>*Trans Date</b></td> <td style="width: 33%;"><b>*Payment Date</b></td> <td style="width: 33%;"><b>Payment Method</b></td> </tr> <tr> <td>07/31/2000</td> <td>07/31/2000</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>*Instructions</b></td> <td><b>Expense Template</b></td> <td><b>Accrual Details</b></td> </tr> <tr> <td>TUS01</td> <td>FEE_EXPENSED</td> <td>Period Start Period End</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="2"></td> <td><b>Accrual Template</b></td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="2"></td> <td>Customize   <a href="#">Find</a>   <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 0 2px;">1</span> of 1 <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 0 2px;">Last</span></td> </tr> </table>						<b>*Trans Date</b>	<b>*Payment Date</b>	<b>Payment Method</b>	07/31/2000	07/31/2000		<b>*Instructions</b>	<b>Expense Template</b>	<b>Accrual Details</b>	TUS01	FEE_EXPENSED	Period Start Period End			<b>Accrual Template</b>			Customize   <a href="#">Find</a>   <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 0 2px;">1</span> of 1 <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 0 2px;">Last</span>
<b>*Trans Date</b>	<b>*Payment Date</b>	<b>Payment Method</b>																					
07/31/2000	07/31/2000																						
<b>*Instructions</b>	<b>Expense Template</b>	<b>Accrual Details</b>																					
TUS01	FEE_EXPENSED	Period Start Period End																					
		<b>Accrual Template</b>																					
		Customize   <a href="#">Find</a>   <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 0 2px;">1</span> of 1 <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 0 2px;">Last</span>																					
<b>Position Details</b> <table border="0" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 25%;"><b>Accrual Period Start</b></td> <td style="width: 25%;"><b>Accrual Period End</b></td> <td style="width: 25%;"><b>Amount Accrued</b></td> <td style="width: 25%;"><b>Start Accrual Amount</b></td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </table>						<b>Accrual Period Start</b>	<b>Accrual Period End</b>	<b>Amount Accrued</b>	<b>Start Accrual Amount</b>														
<b>Accrual Period Start</b>	<b>Accrual Period End</b>	<b>Amount Accrued</b>	<b>Start Accrual Amount</b>																				
<b>Cash Flow Details</b> <table border="0" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 25%;"><b>Amount</b></td> <td style="width: 25%;"><b>Approval Submitted</b></td> <td style="width: 25%;"><b>Payment Number</b></td> <td style="width: 25%;"><b>Recon Status</b></td> </tr> <tr> <td>-15.00</td> <td>N</td> <td></td> <td>UNR</td> </tr> </table>						<b>Amount</b>	<b>Approval Submitted</b>	<b>Payment Number</b>	<b>Recon Status</b>	-15.00	N		UNR										
<b>Amount</b>	<b>Approval Submitted</b>	<b>Payment Number</b>	<b>Recon Status</b>																				
-15.00	N		UNR																				

Enter Fees page

### Fee Information

#### VAT

Click the link to access the VAT Transactions Details page. The system performs an audit, checking that the business unit of the Bank Code is VAT enabled, and the Fee Code is configured for VAT and associated with a VAT applicable accounting template. The VAT Transactions Details page displays only if these conditions are met.

### Payment Information

<b>Tran Date</b> (transaction date)	Enter the actual transaction date of the fee entry. The system automatically populates this field with the system date.
<b>Payment Date</b>	Enter the specified payment date of the fee entry.
<b>Pay Fee</b>	Select to pay the fee. Also select a Payment Method.
<b>Instructions</b> (settlement instructions)	Select settlement instructions for processing the fee entry payment.
<b>Expense Template</b>	Select an accounting template to record this fee entry as an expense.

## Accrual Details

<b>Period Start and Period End</b>	Enter the beginning and ending dates of the accrual period.
<b>Accrual Template</b>	Specify the accounting template to record the accrual amount for this fee entry.

## Position Details

As the fee is processed through the system, you can view accrual details.

## Cash Flow

As the fee is processed through the system, you can view approval and payment details.

## See Also

[Chapter 10, “Processing VAT Transactions in Treasury Management,” Creating VAT Transactions for Fees, page 189](#)

[Chapter 8, “Working with Settlements ,” page 135](#)

## Creating External Transactions Fee Entries

Create external transactions for fee entries.

See *PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Reconciling Statements,” Entering External Transactions.



## CHAPTER 5

# Defining Cash Positions

This chapter provides an overview of defining cash positions, discusses the prerequisite tasks to setup trees and positions, and describes how to:

- Setup trees and positions.
- Manage position worksheets.
- Manually create position worksheets.
- Create Cash Management position reports.

---

## Understanding Trees and Positions

PeopleSoft provides a tool for managing your treasury organization's positions. Using PeopleSoft Tree Manager, you define hierarchical structures that describe the specific information that's important for your organization to manage. You can use these trees for risk analysis, cash management, position management, deal validation, limit analysis, and any other functions that you deem applicable.

Position trees are used in Treasury Management for many purposes, including:

- Cash position analysis
- Deal validation
- Limit checking

In Treasury Management, a *position* is the total financial value of a particular set of transactions that are executed on behalf of an enterprise. A *cash position* analyzes cash flows to determine the amount of cash that is available at a particular time.

Think of a position as a way of categorizing the entire PeopleSoft enterprise transaction database into subgroups, or sources, with totals. Using Tree Manager and PeopleSoft online pages, you depict the hierarchy for a position (using tree nodes), specify the data sources to include, and define which fields to sum to provide the total for a particular position.

### See Also

*PeopleSoft Risk Management 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Managing Position Limits”

---

## Common Elements Used in This Chapter

<b>Alias Name</b>	Create more intuitive field names that you use in the cash position process.
<b>Position Source ID</b>	Displays the node's data source.
<b>Position Source Set</b>	Displays the criteria set to which the node belongs.
<b>Process Frequency</b>	Select <i>Always</i> , <i>Once</i> , or <i>Never</i> .
<b>Weighting</b>	Set the percentage that you apply to your Position Manager. For example, you use the weight of <i>1.1</i> to forecast a 10 percent increase or 110 percent of your current situation. Likewise, you use a weight of <i>.9</i> for a 10 percent decrease or 90 percent of your current situation.



Click the Field Description button to enter a description for each row.

---

## Setting Up Trees and Positions

To define tree and position information, use the following components:

- Define Time Buckets component (POS\_TIME\_SPAN\_PNL).
- Position Field Type component (POS\_FIELD\_TYPE\_PNL).
- Position Source Definition component (POS\_SOURCE\_TBL).

Here's the steps to set up trees and positions:

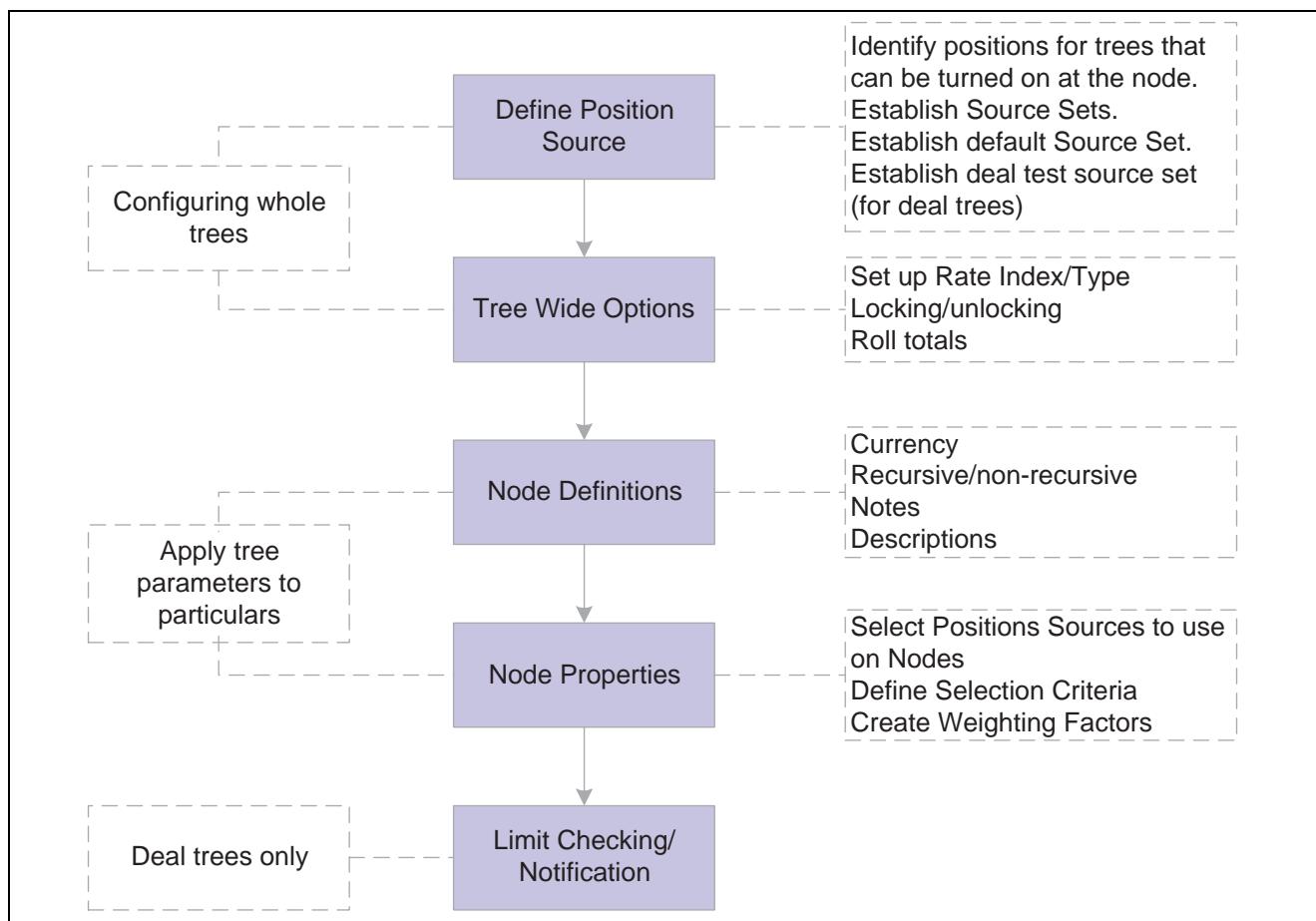
1. Define position field types.
2. Define position source.
3. Create a position tree.
4. Complete the position bin pages. (Four or five position bin pages, depending on tree.)
  - Enter position tree source information.
  - Specify tree wide options.
  - Define tree nodes.
  - Define node properties.
  - (Optional) Define node property SQL selection criteria.
  - Define position limits.
5. Create position SQL.
6. Schedule position tree SQL.
7. Define time buckets.
8. Schedule position time spans.

## PeopleSoft Tree Definition

The position management tool enables you to calculate positions based on enterprise-wide data. PeopleSoft delivers sample position fields and sources in the sample database; however, we provide pages where you can define the data that you want to track within the position analysis. Typically, you implement page-level security to limit access to these pages to the appropriate people within your organization. Two pages control the database fields that are available to position management: Position Field Types and Position Field Source.

There are five pages in the Position Bins component used to define a tree. The purpose of the tree determines which position bin pages you need to complete—you don't necessarily need to complete every page in the component. One of these pages, Position Limits, applies only to Treasury Management position trees. If you're working with a cash position tree, this page doesn't appear.

You need to set up your position sources and alias names before creating a position tree. After you have created the tree, you generate the SQL and define time sets and cash position worksheets. This graphic illustrates the set up process:



Setting up trees for Treasury Management

Each tree node corresponds to one or many position sources. Because you can define an unlimited number of position trees, you can analyze your data in as many ways as you see fit. For Treasury Management position trees, you can also associate limits with a node.

When analyzing positions, you use time spans to define the periods for which to view the data. This adds another dimension, time, to your positions. The system stores the position records and you can use them for historical analysis and to forecast future positions.

## Effective Dating of Treasury Trees

PeopleSoft Cash Management Cash Position functionality *does not* support trees defined with multiple effective dates. In Cash Management, each tree may only have one effective date. If you wish to use the same tree with different (multiple) effective dates, you must copy the tree, save it with a unique name, and specify an effective date. For example, to define the TR\_CASH\_POSITION tree with three effective dates (January 1, 2000; January 1, 2001; and January 1, 2002), you need to create the following three trees:

Tree Name	Effective Date
TR_CASH_POSITION_2000	01/01/2000
TR_CASH_POSITION_2001	01/01/2001
TR_CASH_POSITION_2002	01/01/2002

### See Also

*PeopleTools PeopleBook: PeopleSoft Tree Manager*

## Common Elements in this Section

<b>Pos Tree Source</b> (position tree source)	Define the source of data to include in a tree. This applies to the entire tree and is defined only once for each tree.
<b>Tree-Wide Options</b>	Set revaluation options, deal validation rules, and running total options for an entire tree.
<b>Node Definition</b>	Define characteristics for a node, including data source, summarization rules, and revaluation currency.
<b>Node Properties</b>	Determine which subset of records to include in a tree node. SQL is required for non-recursive nodes but is optional for recursive nodes.
<b>Position Limits</b>	Define internal and external limits for a tree, and notification rules when limits are breached. Applies only to trees that use the structure <i>TR_POSITION</i> .

## Pages Used to Setup Trees and Positions

Page Name	Object Name	Navigation	Usage
Position Field Types	POS_FIELD_TYPE_PNL	Setup Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Treasury, Position Field Type	Define the sets of table fields that are available to the position management tool.
Position Source Definition	POS_SOURCE_TBL	Setup Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Treasury, Position Source	Provide a more intuitive list of fields from which to select in the Position Manager. Use these alias names when entering selection criteria for position nodes

Page Name	Object Name	Navigation	Usage
Tree Manager	PSTREEMGR	Tree Manager, Tree Manager	Add a position tree and insert the tree nodes.
Position Tree Source	POS_TREE_SOURCE	Click Edit Data on the Tree Manager page. Select the Pos Tree Source (position tree source) tab.	Enter general information about the position source.
Tree-Wide Options	POS_TREE_PNL	Click Edit Data on the Tree Manager page. Select the Tree Wide Options tab.	Specify the market rate index to use for currency revaluation and define whether a deal needs to meet the criteria for an end node on the tree during deal validation. You can also select an option to compute running totals during position analysis.
Node Definition	POS_DEF_OPER_PNL	Click Edit Data on the Tree Manager page. Select the Node Definition tab.	Specify the characteristics for each node of a tree.
Node Properties	POS_SOURCE_SET_PNL	Click Edit Data on the Tree Manager page. Select the Node Properties tab.	Define sources for the specified node.
All Selection Criteria	POS_ALL_CNDTN_SEC	Click View All Selection Criteria on the Node Properties page.	Create SQL statements of selection criteria for Position Source IDs.
Selection Criteria	POS_DEF_WHERE_SEC	Click Selection Criteria on the Node Properties page.	Enter selection criteria for a specific source ID.
Position Limits	POS_LIMITS	Click Edit Data on the Tree Manager page. Select the Position Limits tab.	Use the page <i>for treasury position trees only</i> to define your own internal treasury organization's limits, any external limits, and the limit currency to apply to the current tree node. You also indicate when limit checking should occur, who should be notified, and under what conditions. If you are using the Limit Checked workflow, you must establish position limits for the system to generate notifications.

Page Name	Object Name	Navigation	Usage
Create Position SQL	POS_CREATE_SQL	Cash Management, Administer Cash, Create Position SQL	<p>Translate conversational language into the language of database operations. You can roll up functions by extending SQL statements downward from the Parent level.</p> <p>This page is automatically accessed if needed when running position trees in the Position Manager.</p>
Schedule Position Tree SQL	TR_AE_RUNCNTL	Cash Management, Administer Cash, Schedule Position Tree SQL	Run the Schedule/Calculate Tree SQL process (TR_POS_CSQL) to set up the intervals in which your SQL will run.
Define Time Buckets	POS_TIME_SPAN_PNL	Cash Management, Administer Cash, Time Bucket Definition	Categorize information from your treasury position or generated cash position. For example, you can define time spans with varying intervals, such as daily for a week, then weekly for a quarter, and then quarterly for a year. The time spans that you define can overlap or run consecutively or both.
Calculate Position Time Spans	TR_AE_RUNCNTL	Cash Management, Administer Cash, Calculate Position Time Spans	Run the Find Position Time Spans to Calculate process (TR_POSN_TSPAN) to set up the time spans for positions.

## Defining Position Field Types

Access the Position Field Types page.

## Position Field Types

**Alias Name:** TREE NODE

**\*Field Type:**

**Description:** Tree Node

**Prompting Method**

**\*Prompt:**  **Record Prompt:** POS\_GEN\_TRND\_VW

**Field Name:**

**Define Meta Text**

**Meta Field** **Meta Text:**

Position Field Types page

### Prompting Method

Select a Prompt option to indicate how to control prompting for valid values for this alias.

#### Record

Select to base the prompts on the actual database records; in Record Prompt, select the field on which prompting is based.

#### Translate

Select to base prompting on translate values rather than the records themselves, and select the Field Name to use for translation. This applies only to field records that use translate values.

### Define Meta Text

#### Meta Field

Select the check box to incorporate a SQL statement with this alias. (Typically, you do not select this option.).

In the Treasury Management sample database, %THIS DEAL is an example of a Meta field. The table below lists the alias names that are delivered with the sample database:

Alias Name	Description
%THIS DEAL	This Deal
ACCOUNT	Account
ACCRUED INTEREST	Accrued Interest

Alias Name	Description
ACQUISITION CODE	Acquisition Code
AMORTIZED DISCOUNT	Amortized Discount
AMOUNT	Amount
ASSET CATEGORY	Asset Category
ASSET CLASS	Asset Class
ASSET COST TYPE	Asset Cost Type
ASSET STATUS	Asset Status
BANK ACCOUNT CD	Bank Account Code
BANK ACCOUNT KEY	Bank Account Key
BANK BALANCE	Bank Balance
BANK COUNTERPARTY	Bank Counterparty
BANK ID NUMBER	Bank ID Number
BANK SET ID	SetID for Bank
BANK TYPE	Bank Type
BASE CURRENCY	Base Currency
BOOK	Book
BOOK VALUE	Book Value
BROKER	Broker
BUDGET JOB CODE	Budget Job Code

Alias Name	Description
BUDGET PROPOSAL ID	Budget Proposal ID
BUDGET SCENARIO	Scenario
BUSINESS UNIT	Business Unit
COUNTRY	Country
CPTY	Counterparty
CURRENCY	Currency
DEAL AMOUNT	Deal Amount
DEAL DATE	Deal Date
DEAL MATURITY DATE	Deal Maturity Date
DEAL SETTLEMENT DATE	Deal Settlement Date
DEAL STATUS	Deal Status
DEAL TERM	Deal Term
DEALER	Dealer
EXCLUDE FROM POSITION	Exclude From Position
FACILITY ID	Facility ID
FACILITY REFERENCE	Facility
FINANCIAL ASSET	Financial Asset
GL ACCOUNT	GL Account
GL AFFILIATE	GL Affiliate

Alias Name	Description
GL BUDGET LEDGER	Budget Ledger
GL DEPARTMENT ID	GL Department ID
GL PRODUCT	GL Product
GL PROJECT ID	GL Project ID
INSTRUMENT	Instrument
INSTRUMENT BASE TYPE	Instrument Base Type
INTEREST ACCRUED	Interest Accrued to Date
LIMIT RESERVED	Limit Reserved
ORIGINAL DEAL TERM	Original Deal Term
PARENT ID	Parent ID
PORTFOLIO	Portfolio
REFERENCE	Reference
SETTLEMENT DATE	Settlement Date
TRANSACTION ISSUER	Issuer
TREASURY DEAL ID	Treasury Deal ID
TREASURY DEAL LEG	Treasury Deal Leg
TREASURY DEAL LINE	Treasury Deal Line
VALUE DATE	Value Date

## Defining Position Sources

Access the Position Source Definition page.

### Position Source Definition

SetID:	SHARE	Source:	TREASURY_CASHFLOWS																																																												
Description:	Treasury Cashflows																																																														
*Record:	CASH_FLW_POS_VW	<input type="button" value=""/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Deal View																																																												
<b>Position Source Mappings</b> <table style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="width: 20%;">*Field Name</th> <th style="width: 20%;">*Alias Name</th> <th style="width: 20%;">Description</th> <th style="width: 20%;"></th> <th style="width: 20%;"></th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>BANK_ACCOUNT_NUM</td><td>ACCOUNT</td><td>Bank Account</td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>AMOUNT</td><td>AMOUNT</td><td>Amount</td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>BANK_ACCT_KEY</td><td>BANKACCOUNT KEY</td><td>Bank Account Key</td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>BANK_CD</td><td>BANK COUNTERPARTY</td><td>Bank Code</td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>BNK_ID_NBR</td><td>BANK ID NUMBER</td><td>Other</td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>BANK_SETID</td><td>BANK SET ID</td><td>Bank SetID</td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>SOURCE_BUS_UNIT</td><td>BUSINESS UNIT</td><td>Business Unit</td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>CURRENCY_CD</td><td>CURRENCY</td><td>Currency Code</td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>TR_SOURCE_ID</td><td>REFERENCE</td><td>Reference ID</td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>TR_SOURCE_CD</td><td>TR SOURCE</td><td>Other</td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>BUSINESS_DATE</td><td>VALUE DATE</td><td>Business Date</td><td></td><td></td></tr> </tbody> </table>				*Field Name	*Alias Name	Description			BANK_ACCOUNT_NUM	ACCOUNT	Bank Account			AMOUNT	AMOUNT	Amount			BANK_ACCT_KEY	BANKACCOUNT KEY	Bank Account Key			BANK_CD	BANK COUNTERPARTY	Bank Code			BNK_ID_NBR	BANK ID NUMBER	Other			BANK_SETID	BANK SET ID	Bank SetID			SOURCE_BUS_UNIT	BUSINESS UNIT	Business Unit			CURRENCY_CD	CURRENCY	Currency Code			TR_SOURCE_ID	REFERENCE	Reference ID			TR_SOURCE_CD	TR SOURCE	Other			BUSINESS_DATE	VALUE DATE	Business Date		
*Field Name	*Alias Name	Description																																																													
BANK_ACCOUNT_NUM	ACCOUNT	Bank Account																																																													
AMOUNT	AMOUNT	Amount																																																													
BANK_ACCT_KEY	BANKACCOUNT KEY	Bank Account Key																																																													
BANK_CD	BANK COUNTERPARTY	Bank Code																																																													
BNK_ID_NBR	BANK ID NUMBER	Other																																																													
BANK_SETID	BANK SET ID	Bank SetID																																																													
SOURCE_BUS_UNIT	BUSINESS UNIT	Business Unit																																																													
CURRENCY_CD	CURRENCY	Currency Code																																																													
TR_SOURCE_ID	REFERENCE	Reference ID																																																													
TR_SOURCE_CD	TR SOURCE	Other																																																													
BUSINESS_DATE	VALUE DATE	Business Date																																																													

Position Source Definition page

PeopleSoft includes sample position sources in the sample database. They may not be suitable for all environments.

**Note.** At the time of installation, you should evaluate the appropriateness of the delivered data to your business context and assess whether to create your own position sources. In many cases, you will need to create your own.

**Record**                   Select the database from which the position source derives data.

**Deal View**               Select to permit re-mapping of amount fields for different instruments.

## Position Source Mappings

**Field Name**               Displays available field names of the selected Record.



Click Position Field Types to define the sets of table fields that are available to the position management tool.



Click Long Description to enter a comprehensive description for the field.

## Creating a Position Tree

Access the Tree Manager page.

### See Also

*PeopleTools PeopleBook: PeopleSoft Tree Manager*

## Entering Position Tree Source Information

Access the Position Tree Source page.

Position Tree Source page

**Position Source Set** Define the source for the tree (for example, CASH or DEAL). Select the check box to set this as the Default Source Set. For a deal tree, you can specify this Position Source Set as a Deal Test.

**Position Source ID** The value you select determines the display of the Amount Fields grid. Complete all fields.

## Specifying Tree-Wide Options

Access the Tree Wide Options page.

Tree Wide Options page

**Market Rate Index and Rate Type**

When the currency of the amount used for determining a position is not the same currency that you define as the node currency, use these fields to revalue the amount.

You must establish market rates for each currency pair that you revalue from the source position's currency to the node position's currency, or the system excludes the data. For example, if you have various sources of data where the currency is *USD*, *GBP*, *DEM*, *JPY*, and the position currency for the node is set to *USD*, you define the following exchange rates:

From	To
USD	USD
GBP	USD
DEM	USD
JPY	USD

---

**Note.** When an exchange rate is entered from its own currency to its own currency, you must set the rate to *1*.

## Tree Options

<b>Allow Manual Updates</b>	Select to enable manual updates to the Lock/Unlock function on the cash position worksheet.
<b>Carry Total Forward</b>	Select to compute running totals when the position is evaluated. The system adds ending balance amounts for one period to the beginning balance amounts for the next period. If you select this check box, also select the node, in Add Total to Node, to which you will carry the totals forward. Typically, you use this for cash position trees, and the node that you select is the node that represents your beginning ledger balance.
<b>Deal Must Exist as a Leaf</b>	<p>If you're working with a cash position tree, this option does not apply, and won't appear on this page.</p> <p>Select if you require that a deal must match the criteria for an end node (leaf) of a tree to be valid. Deal validation testing occurs when you click the Deal Test button at deal entry. If this check box is not selected, then deals that don't specifically match the criteria for an end node, but do meet the criteria for a level in the tree's hierarchy, are considered valid.</p>

---

**Note.** For deal validation using the Deal Test button, a tree *must* include *%THIS DEAL* in its root node selection criteria.

## Defining Tree Nodes

Access the Node Definition page.

Pos Tree Source | Tree Wide Options | **Node Definition** | Node Properties

**SetID:** SHARE **Tree Name:** TR\_CASH\_POSITION

**Tree Node:** CASH POSITION

**Tree Node Properties**

**Description:** Cash Position **\*Node Mode:** Recursive

**\*Position Currency:** USD  US Dollar

**Comments/Notes:**

Node Definition page

**Node Mode**

Your use of this option depends on the purpose of the node. For example, if you're setting up a tree to track currency exposure, you may want to track exposure for only four or five main currencies. In that case, you would set the parent node to *Non-recursive* because you don't intend to include all possible foreign exchange (FX) deals in the child nodes, and you want the parent node to provide total exposure for *all* currencies. On the other hand, if you want the parent node to provide total exposure for only the currencies selected in the child nodes, then you would set the parent node to *Recursive*. During position analysis, if your tree hierarchy contains parent nodes that are non-recursive, and the children beneath that node don't specifically select all the data, the remaining amounts will be incorporated into another node so that the sum total of the child nodes equals that of the parent.

*Recursive:* If a node is recursive, its total is determined by summing the totals of all the child nodes beneath it.

*Non-recursive:* If a node is non-recursive, its total is determined by summing the amounts for those transactions that meet the selection criteria for that node, independent of any child nodes that may exist beneath it.

**Position Currency**

Each node can report amounts in a different currency. Use to select the currency on which to base this node's amounts. Any amounts that aren't in this currency will be revalued to this currency, using the market rate settings that you made on the Tree-Wide Options page.

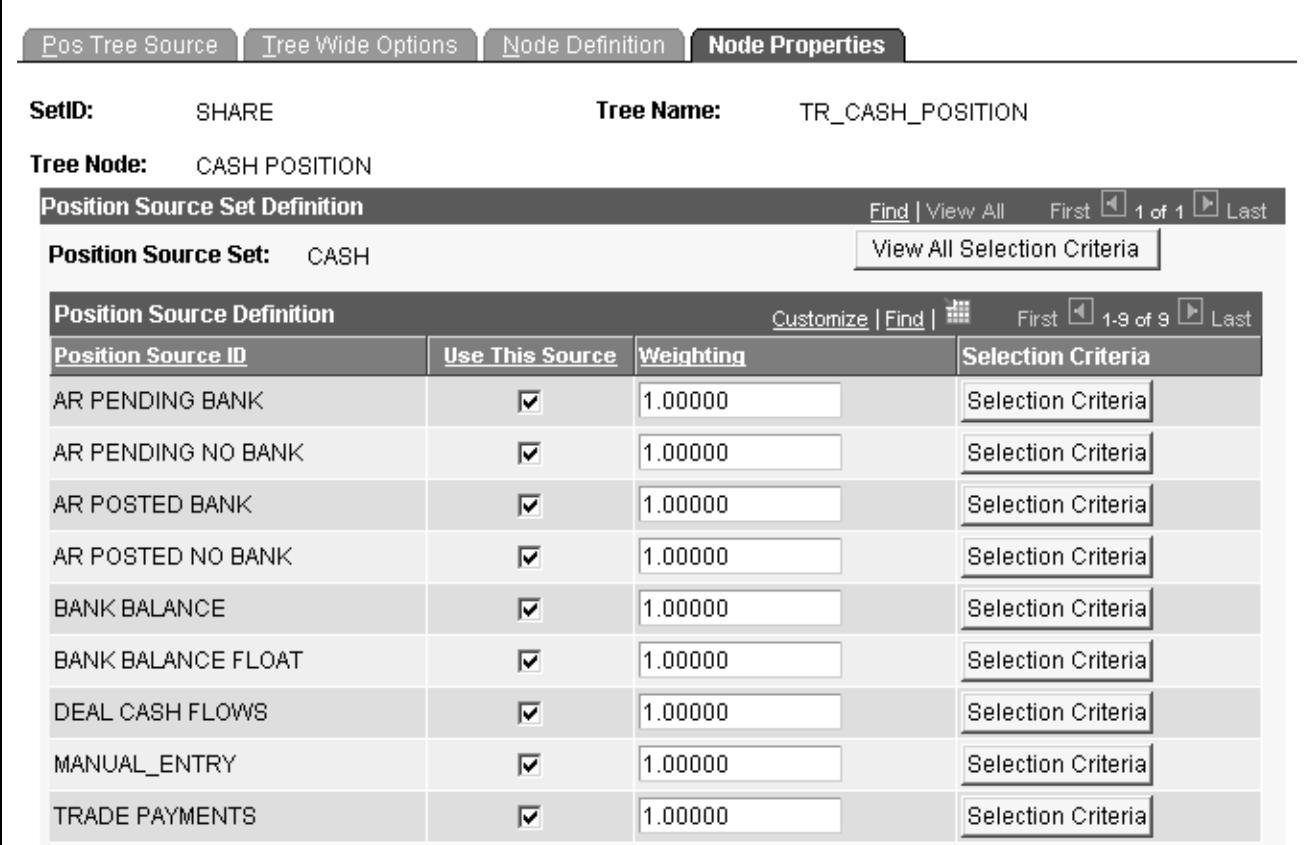
---

**Note.** End nodes, or leaves, of a tree must always be set to *Non-recursive*, and non-recursive nodes *must* have selection criteria defined for each position source they use.

---

## Defining Node Properties

Access the Node Properties page.



The screenshot shows the Node Properties page with the following details:

- SetID:** SHARE
- Tree Name:** TR\_CASH\_POSITION
- Tree Node:** CASH POSITION
- Position Source Set Definition:**
  - Position Source Set:** CASH
  - Position Source Definition:** A table listing various position source IDs with their use status, weighting, and selection criteria.

Position Source Definition			
Position Source ID	Use This Source	Weighting	Selection Criteria
AR PENDING BANK	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	1.00000	Selection Criteria
AR PENDING NO BANK	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	1.00000	Selection Criteria
AR POSTED BANK	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	1.00000	Selection Criteria
AR POSTED NO BANK	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	1.00000	Selection Criteria
BANK BALANCE	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	1.00000	Selection Criteria
BANK BALANCE FLOAT	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	1.00000	Selection Criteria
DEAL CASH FLOWS	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	1.00000	Selection Criteria
MANUAL_ENTRY	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	1.00000	Selection Criteria
TRADE PAYMENTS	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	1.00000	Selection Criteria

Node Properties page

**Use this Source**

Clear the check box to prevent use of a Position Source ID.

**Selection Criteria**

Click to view the Selection Criteria page for the selected Position Source ID, or click View All Selection Criteria to view all Selection Criteria information.

## Defining Node Properties SQL Selection Criteria for Position Source Sets

Access the Node Properties - All Selection Criteria page.

**All Selection Criteria**

**Position Source Set:** CASH

**Position Source Definition** [Find](#) [View 1](#) First [1](#) of 9 [Last](#)

**Position Source ID:** AR PENDING BANK

**Criteria** [Find](#) First [1](#) of 1 [Last](#)

Open	Alias Name	Operator	Value	Close	Oper	[+]	[−]
<input type="button" value="("/>	BUSINESS UNIT	<input type="button" value="Search"/> <input type="button" value="Print"/>	<input type="button" value="="/>	BLGE1	<input type="button" value="Search"/>	<input type="button" value=")"/>	<input type="button" value=""/>

**Position Source ID:** AR PENDING NO BANK

**Criteria** [Find](#) First [1](#) of 1 [Last](#)

Open	Alias Name	Operator	Value	Close	Oper	[+]	[−]
<input type="button" value="["/>		<input type="button" value="Search"/> <input type="button" value="Print"/>	<input type="button" value="="/>		<input type="button" value="Search"/>	<input type="button" value="]"/>	<input type="button" value=""/>

**Position Source ID:** AR POSTED BANK

**Criteria** [Find](#) First [1](#) of 1 [Last](#)

Open	Alias Name	Operator	Value	Close	Oper	[+]	[−]
<input type="button" value="["/>		<input type="button" value="Search"/> <input type="button" value="Print"/>	<input type="button" value="="/>		<input type="button" value="Search"/>	<input type="button" value="]"/>	<input type="button" value=""/>

Node Properties - All Selection Criteria page

After you create SQL statements with selection criteria for position source IDs, use the Create Position SQL page to process the SQL statements for the tree.

**Open/Close** Select a character to open or close the statement.

**Operator** Select a mathematical operator, and specify the Value for the Alias Name.

**Oper (operand)** Select a value when concatenating multiple SQL statements.

## See Also

[Chapter 5, “Defining Cash Positions ,” Creating Position SQL, page 58](#)

## Defining Position Limits

Access the Position Limits page.

Pos Tree Source | Tree Wide Options | Node Definition | Node Properties | **Position Limits**

**SetID:** SHARE **Tree Name:** USER\_LIMITS

**Tree Node:** USER\_LIMITS

**Position Limits**

**Position Type:** Long Limit Only **Internal/External Limits:** Internal

**Limit Check**

Pre-Defined  Deal Entry

Recurrence: M-F at 5pm

**Currency:**

**Min Long:** 100,000,000.00 **Max Long:** 10,000,000,000.00

**Limit Warning Notification**

Role Name	Percentage	Percent	Value	Percent	Value
Broker	<input type="text"/> <input type="button"/>	<input type="text"/> <input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/> <input type="button"/>	<input type="text"/> <input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/> <input type="button"/>
DEALING MANA	<input type="text"/> <input type="button"/>	<input type="text"/> <input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/> <input type="button"/>	<input type="text"/> <input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/> <input type="button"/>

Position Limits page

**Position Type**

Select from the following options:

*Long Limit Only:* Select this option if you want notification in conditions where you have a long position. Specify values in the *Min* (minimum), *Max* (maximum), and *Long* fields.

*Short and Long Limit:* Select this option if you want notification in conditions where you have either a short or a long position. Specify values in the *Max Short* and *Max Long* fields.

*Short Limit Only:* Select this option if you want notification in conditions where you have a short position. Specify values in the *Min Short* and *Max Short* fields.

**Internal/External**

Indicate whether the limit is determined by an *Internal* source or is imposed from an *External* source, such as a counterparty.

**Currency**

Enter the long and short limit amounts for the defined currency.

**Limit Check**

Use the Limit Check grid to indicate when these position limits are checked. You can select both Pre-Defined and Deal Entry.

**Pre-Defined**

Select this check box for position limits to be automatically checked, and define a Recurrence to check position limits at regular intervals.

**Deal Entry**

Select to ensure that these position limits can be checked at deal entry (by clicking the Test Limits button on the Deal Header page).

## Limit Warning Notification

**Role Name** Select a role name to receive warning notification. Specify either a limit Value or select the Percentage check box and enter a limit Percent that activates the warning notification.

### See Also

*PeopleSoft Risk Management 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Managing Position Limits”

*PeopleSoft Deal Management 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Defining Instrument Types and Instrument Templates”

## Creating Position SQL

Access the Create Position SQL page.

**Create SQL** Click to generate the SQL for the tree. When the process completes, a dialog box appears with the message “Completed creating SQL.”

**SQL Statement** Displays the SQL statement that the system generates for the node.

## Scheduling Position Tree SQL

Access the Schedule Position Tree SQL page.

**Schedule Position Tree SQL**

User ID:	DVP1	Run Control ID:	RENTOW_0055	Process Monitor	Run
Program Name:	TR_POS_CSQL				
<b>Last Run</b>					
Process Origin:	Other	Process Instance:	Status: Pending		
Process Frequency:	Once	Market:	U.S.	As Of Date:	10/01/2003
<b>Parameters</b>					
State Record:	POS_CSQL_AET	Bind Variable Name:	TREE_NAME	<input type="button" value="Find"/> <input type="button" value="First"/> <input type="button" value="4 of 1"/> <input type="button" value="Last"/>	
Value:	CASH			<input type="button" value="+"/> <input type="button" value="-"/>	

Schedule Position Tree SQL page

**Bind Variable Name** In the Parameters grid is an Application Engine run control function that enables you to specify the variable for which you are setting the value. Select the Bind Variable Name of Tree Name, and enter the specific tree name to be calculated in Value. You can add records and specify as many bind variable names as are pertinent to the job.

## Defining Time Buckets

Access the Define Time Buckets page.

**Define Time Buckets**

SetID: SHARE   Time Set: DAILY   \*Description: Daily Forecast

**Time Segment**

Number: 1   Time Segment Description: Daily Forecast

Find | View All   First 1 of 1  

**Start**

\*Type: Today

**Cycle**

\*Type: Relative   Number: 1   Relative: Days

**End**

\*Type: Number of periods   180 Times

**Calculate**

▼ Resulting Time Periods

Period Start Date	Period End Date	Term
10/28/2003	10/28/2003	1
10/29/2003	10/29/2003	1
10/30/2003	10/30/2003	1
10/31/2003	10/31/2003	1
11/01/2003	11/01/2003	1
11/02/2003	11/02/2003	1
11/03/2003	11/03/2003	1

Define Time Buckets page

**Number**

Indicates which sequential time segment you're modifying.

**Start**

Select a start Type to indicate how the system determine when a time segment starts:

*Defined by Period above:* Starts the current time segment when the prior time segment ends. You can't select this option for the first segment.

*Specific Date:* Starts the current time segment on a specific date. When you select this option, enter the date in Start Date.

*Specific Period:* Starts the current time segment on the first day of a specified period. When you select this option, select the calendar on which to base the Period Start.

*Today:* Start the current time segment today. Select this option when you want the time span to be based on a current date. Every time the system calculates the time span, this is updated with the current date.

**Cycle**

Select a cycle Type to indicate the repetition frequency of a time segment:

*Relative:* Cycles the time segment a relative number of times. When you select this option, enter the Number of times it repeats, and then enter the frequency of repetition in Relative. You can repeat this a number of *Days*, *Months* or *Years*. For example, if you want this time segment to repeat daily for 5 days, enter 5 in Number, and select *Days* in Relative.

**Use Period Definitions:** Cycles the time segment based on the period definitions from a business calendar. When you select this option, select the calendar on which to base this in Frequency. For example, if you want this time segment to cycle by quarters, select a defined quarterly calendar in Frequency.

#### End

Use to control when a time segment ends. After completing the appropriate number of cycles, the following options are available to control the segment's end:

*End of Next Cycle:* Completes the time segment at the end of the next cycle. Select the calendar to use to determine the ending.

*End of Period:* Completes the time segment when the period defined by the selected calendar ends. Select the calendar to use to determine the ending Period.

*End of Previous Cycle:* Completes the time segment when the prior cycle ends. Select the calendar to use to determine the ending Period.

*Number of Periods:* Completes the time segment after repeating the cycle a given number of periods. Enter the number of Times the period should cycle.

#### Calculate

Click to generate the time span intervals. Your results display in the Resulting Time Periods group box.

## Calculate Position Time Spans

Access the Calculate Position Time Spans page.

Calculate Position Time Spans page

#### Bind Variable Name

In the Parameters grid is an Application Engine run control function that enables you to specify the variable for which you are setting the value. Select the Bind Variable Name of *Time Set*, and enter the specific time span to be calculated in Value. You can add records and specify as many bind variable names as are pertinent to the job.

---

## Managing Position Worksheets

To define position forecasting rules, use the Position Forecasting Rules component (POS\_FORECAST\_RULES).

Once you have created your position trees, use the Position Manager to generate the worksheet and manipulate the cash position data.

The Position Manager is based on trees that use the TR\_CASH\_POSITIONS structure. Trees provide a hierarchical structure and enable you to generate numbers that are not automatically captured. Many options are available for generating your worksheet; for example, you can:

- Forecast your position over a period of time or evaluate it for just one day.
- Base your position on a prior worksheet, adjusting the amounts by a specified factor, to estimate future cash positions.
- Calculate the position for an entire tree or for just a particular node of a tree.
- Step through the tree nodes that compose the worksheet, zooming into the detail transactions.

You can copy worksheets to compare actual totals with projected amounts.

---

**Note.** For each tree, only one worksheet can be stored for each calculation date. If you recalculate (using the same calculation date) a worksheet that was stored previously, the new worksheet overwrites the values of the first worksheet. The calculation date is set by the system when the worksheet is generated. We suggest you print files for later comparison.

---

This section discusses how to:

- Generate position worksheets.
- Define Position Manager options.
- Create an ad-hoc position worksheet.
- View Position Manager results.
- View transaction details by source.
- Create forecasting rules.
- Copy worksheets.
- Schedule the Position Manager.
- Export worksheets with PS/nVision.

## Common Elements in This Section

**Calculation Preferences**      Specify a predefined calculation preferences sheet (Position Manager Options) to calculate your cash position.

**Worksheet**      Select the tree to use as the basis of your worksheet.

**Position**      Controls which portion of the tree to use when calculating the worksheet, automatically using the top level or root node of the tree. If you want

to calculate a worksheet for a particular node, enter that node here. Typically you generate the worksheet from the root node.

## Pages Used to Manage Position Worksheets

Page Name	Object Name	Navigation	Usage
Position Manager	POS_IMPCT_MGR	Cash Management, Cash Position, Position Manager	Administer your worksheets from a central location.
Position Manager Options	POS_IMPCT_OPT_PNL	Click Edit on the Position Manager page.	Set up the options for the Position Manager.
Ad-Hoc Position Worksheet	POS_IMPCT_OPT_PNL	Click Create an Ad Hoc Worksheet on the Position Manager page.	Set up ad hoc positions.
Position Manager Results	POS_IMPCT_RS LT_PNL	Click Calculate on the Ad Hoc Position Worksheet page.	Display the results of the calculation on the Position Manager page. This page appears automatically after the calculation is complete.
Position by Source	POS_IMPCT_RS LT_DT1	Click Drill to Detail on the Position Manager Results page.	View the source transactions for the node.
Position Forecasting Rules	POS_FORECAST_RULES	Cash Management, Administer Cash, Position Forecasting Rules	Set up rules for forecasting.
Copy/Apply Forecasting Rules	POS_HIST_FORECAST	Click Copy on the Position Manager Results page.	Generate a copy of a worksheet. To create projected forecasts or modify cash flow amounts, you must create a worksheet copy.
Schedule Position Manager	TR_AE_RUNCNTL	Cash Management, Cash Position, Schedule Position Manager	Run the Cash Position/Position Monitor process (TR_POS_TOTAL) to schedule the Position Manager to run at specified times.
Position Report Periods	POS_REPORT_PNL	Cash Management, Cash Position, Position Report Periods	Use PS/nVision to generate an Excel file of Position Manager.

## Generate Position Worksheets

Access the Position Manager page.

**Position Manager**

My Worksheets		
Worksheet	Position	Calculation Preferences
INTRADAY_CASH_AVP	TOTAL	DAILY
<input type="button" value="Search"/> <input type="button" value="Edit"/> <input type="button" value="Calculate"/> <input type="button" value="+"/> <input type="button" value="-"/>		

Position Manager page



Click Edit to select options and limitations for working with your positions.

**Calculate**

Click to generate position results for the specified worksheet, position, and calculation preferences.

## Defining Position Manager Options

Access the Position Manager Options page.

**Position Manager Options**

Calculation Preferences			
Calculation Preferences:	<input type="button" value="DAILY"/> <input type="button" value="Search"/>		
Description:	<input type="text" value="Daily Time Set"/>		
Time Horizon Options			
Time Horizon:	<input type="button" value="Source Set"/>		
Value Date:	<input type="text"/> <input type="button" value=""/>		
Source Set:	<input type="text" value="09/20/2003"/> <input type="button" value=""/>		
Time Set:	<input type="text"/> <input type="button" value=""/> <input type="button" value=""/>		
Recalculation Options			
Recalculation Option:	<input type="button" value="Recalculate Entire Worksheet"/>		
Calculation Date:	<input type="text"/> <input type="button" value=""/>		
Copied Calculation Date:	<input type="text"/> <input type="button" value=""/>		
Position Impact Functions			
<input type="checkbox"/> Use Source Weighting	<input type="checkbox"/> Include Copied Data	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Show Non Business Day Columns	<input type="checkbox"/> Use Lock Reminder
Transfer Options			
<input checked="" type="radio"/> EFT Transfer	EFT Template ID: <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value=""/>		
<input type="radio"/> Bank Transfer	Bank Transfer Template ID: <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value=""/>		
<input type="radio"/> Deal Entry	Instrument Type: <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value=""/>		

Position Manager Options page (1 of 2)

<b>Revalue Positions</b>			
<b>Revalue Currency:</b> <input type="text"/> 	<b>*Revalue Date Type:</b> <input type="button" value="Use Current Date"/>		
<b>Additional Criteria</b>			
<b>Currency:</b> <input type="text"/> 	<b>Bank Business Unit:</b> <input type="text"/> 	<b>Bank SetID:</b> <input type="text"/> 	
<b>Bank:</b> <input type="text"/> 	<b>Account:</b> <input type="text"/> 		
<a href="#">Create Forecasting Rules</a>			<a href="#">Return to Position Manager</a>

Position Manager Options page (2 of 2)

## Time Horizon

Indicate how to group the position totals over time. The time spans must be calculated before you generate the worksheet.

**Value Date** To generate a worksheet with totals for a single day, select and enter the date.

**Source Set** Similar to a Value Date, but you can compare two like tree structures. Source sets enable you to combine multiple tree structures into a single tree; for example, where Actual versus Projected positions have slightly different selection criteria.

**Time Set** To create the position totals over a period of time, select the particular time set from the list of values. This option enables you to generate totals that range over a period of time that is segmented, for example, by the cycles defined in your business calendars, such as daily for a month, then quarterly for six months, and then yearly for two years.



Click to access and edit the Position Time Spans page to define time spans.

## Recalculation Option

**Recalculation Option** Select from the following options to indicate how to calculate the worksheet:

*Recalculate Current Position:* Generates totals for the node selected in Position and any child nodes beneath it.

*Recalculate Entire Worksheet:* Generates totals for the complete tree, regardless of the node selected in Position.

*Use Data Calculated On:* Displays totals generated on an earlier date. If you select this option, enter the date in the adjacent field. This loads an existing worksheet. For example, you can use this option to load a prior worksheet, using it as the basis for a future forecast.

*View Copied Data:* Enables you to view copied worksheets.

## Position Impact Functions

Select any combination of the following options:

<b>Use Source Weighting</b>	Select to use weighting values that you set on the Position Forecasting Rules or Copy/Apply Forecasting Rules pages.
<b>Include Copied Data</b>	Select to include data from the most recent Copy/Apply Forecasting Rules page.
<b>Show Non Business Day Columns</b>	Select to view data columns for regular non-business days (for example, Saturday and Sunday) and holidays.
<b>Use Lock Reminder</b>	Select this check box if you are doing intra-day reporting and cash position analysis (or intra-day cash position analysis). If selected, the system prompts you with a reminder message on the Position Manager page when you click the <a href="#">Return to Position Manager</a> link.

## Transfer Options

Select a transfer option and specify a corresponding template to use on the Funds Transfer page, accessible from the Position Results page.

## Revalue Positions

**Revalue Currency** Select a different currency in which to calculate the worksheet, other than the system currency.

**Revalue Date Type** Select either option:

*Use Current Date:* The system uses the current system date to calculate the worksheet.

*Use Calculation Date:* The system uses the as of the date specified in the Use Data Calculated On option to calculate the worksheet.

## Additional Criteria

As an additional layer of flexibility you can specify criteria to further limit which amounts are included in the Position Manager, either a particular currency or bank information.

---

**Note.** To view a worksheet that was calculated with additional criteria, you must specify the same criteria when you select the Use Data Calculated On option to display the worksheet.

---

## See Also

[Chapter 5, “Defining Cash Positions ,” Defining Time Buckets , page 58](#)

## Creating an Ad-Hoc Position Worksheet

Access the Ad-Hoc Position Worksheet page.

The Ad-Hoc Position Worksheet page contains similar functionality as the Position Manager Options page, with the addition of the *Worksheet* and *Position* fields and the Calculate button.

## See Also

[Chapter 5, “Defining Cash Positions ,” Defining Position Manager Options, page 63](#)

## Viewing Position Manager Results

Access the Position Manager Results page

**Position Manager Results**

<b>Position:</b>	<input type="button" value="TOTAL"/>	<input type="button" value="Refresh Totals"/>	<input type="button" value="Calculate"/>	<input type="button" value="Step Back"/>	<input type="button" value="Copy"/>						
<b>Source Set Date:</b> 09/20/2003											
Node	1. OPENING	FIRST PRESENTMENT	SECOND PRESENTMENT								
OPENING AVAILABLE	12,447,687.26			12,447,687.26			12,447,687.26				
TREASURY INFLOWS	0.00			0.00			0.00				
ACCOUNTS RECEIVABLE	0.00			0.00			0.00				
INTRADAY INFLOWS	0.00			0.00			0.00				
TREASURY OUTFLOWS	0.00			0.00			0.00				
INTRADAY OUTFLOWS	0.00			0.00			0.00				
TARGET BALANCE	0.00			0.00			0.00				
<b>TOTAL</b>		USD	12,447,687.26			12,447,687.26			12,447,687.26		
<b>LOCK ALL NODES</b>											
<a href="#">Enter Manual Position</a>						<a href="#">Return to Position Manager</a>					

Position Manager Results page

Once calculation of the worksheet is complete, the results appear automatically.

**Position**

Indicates the node that you're viewing.

**Refresh Totals**

Click to recalculate column totals.

**Calculate**

Recalculates the cash position based on your defined calculation options. If you edit a node amount and do not save and lock the edited field, clicking Calculate returns the worksheet to its original state.

**Step Back**

You can drill down into node detail and step back up to overall node data. See Navigating Tree Nodes section below.

**Copy**

Click to access the Copy/Apply Forecasting Rules page to use a forecasting function.

The rest of the page displays the worksheet, with the amounts broken down by the Time Set's periods. Each period is listed, along with its start and end date.



If the row is a detail node, that is, if it has no subordinate (child) nodes, click the Drill to Detail button to view the source transactions for the node.



Click the Transfer button to go to the Funds Transfer page.



Click the Lock button to lock the value, which you would enter on an ad hoc basis. To see your new updated totals, save the worksheet and click the Calculate button to refresh the data.

To enable locking, open the tree in Tree Manager and select the Allow Manual Updates check box. If a node is locked, the value will not change if the tree is recalculated. It will stay as it is until it is unlocked.



Click the Unlock button to unlock the value and edit the cell. The next time you recalculate the worksheet, the system enters this number from system data.

#### Scroll Left and Scroll Right

Click the buttons to navigate the worksheet's time periods.

#### Manual Position Entry

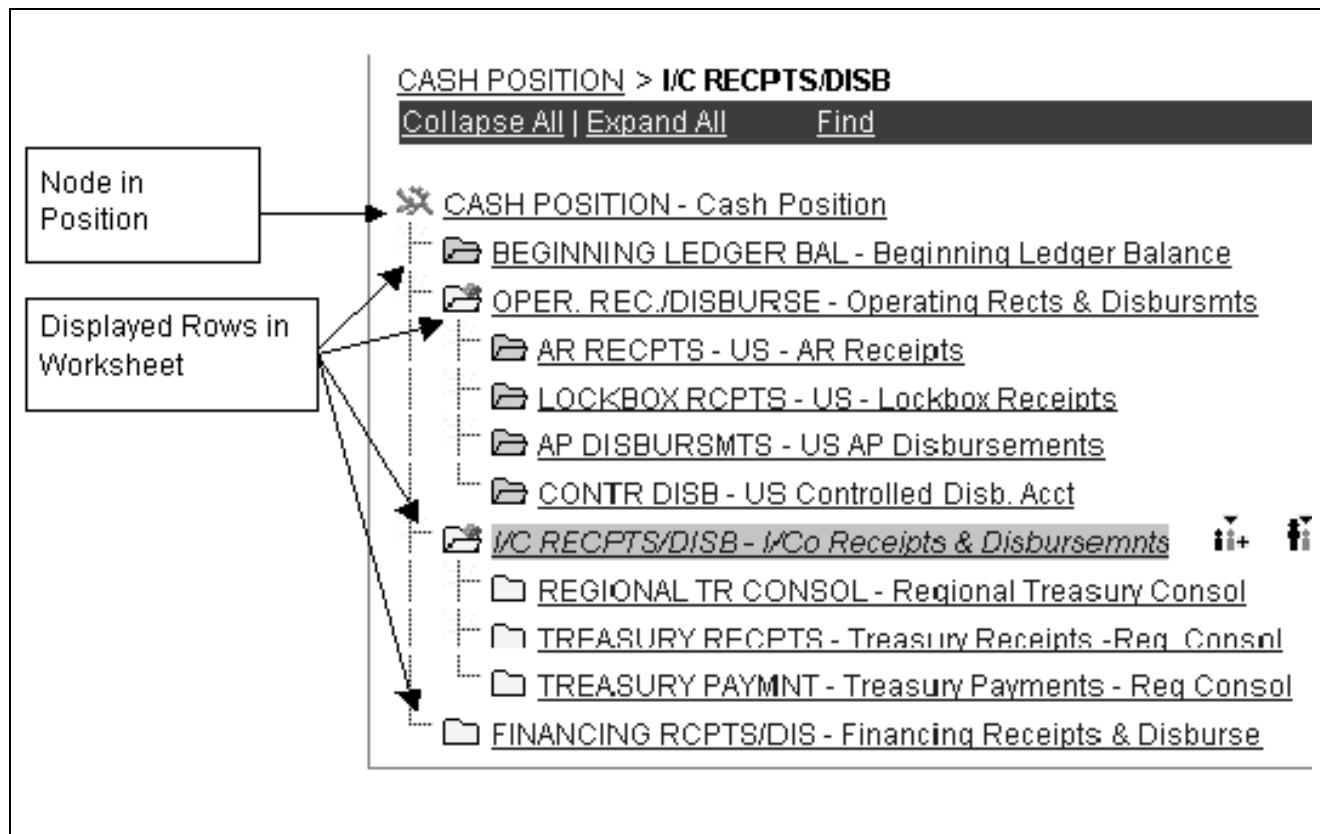
Click the link to apply tree functionality to ad hoc data.

### Navigating Tree Nodes

Each row of the worksheet represents a child node of the Position listed.

- If a row contains additional nodes beneath it, you can navigate down the tree to those child nodes by clicking the Next Step button. The Position field updates to indicate the current node.
- To navigate back up to the prior level, click the Step Back button.

The worksheet displays only the nodes at the next immediate level below the Position node. As shown in the following diagram, when the Position node is *CASH POSITION*, you see only the nodes at the next immediate level; in other words, you see the four children of that node. To see the worksheet that is composed of the rows AR RECPTS, LOCKBOX RCPTS, AP DISBURSMTS, and CONTR DISB, change the Position node to *OPER. REC./DISBURSE*.



Viewing children of a position node

## See Also

[Chapter 5, “Defining Cash Positions ,” Creating Forecasting Rules, page 68](#)

[Chapter 5, “Defining Cash Positions ,” Copying Worksheets, page 69](#)

[Chapter 5, “Defining Cash Positions ,” Manually Creating Position Worksheet Data , page 74](#)

## Viewing Transaction Details by Source

Access the Position by Source page.

### Position Source ID

Enter search parameters to view position source transactions for a specified period. Select a Position Source ID and Period, then click the Search button.

## Creating Forecasting Rules

Access the Position Forecasting Rules page.

You can create forecasting rules where the rule applies to three variables: business day convention, increasing/decreasing by a factor, or shifting days. A forecasting rule would apply at the tree level. In addition, you can refine these variables at the node/source level.

## Copying Worksheets

Access the Copy/Apply Forecasting Rules page.

**Copy/Apply Forecasting Rules**

**Tree Name:** INTRADAY\_CASH\_AVP    **Description:**

**Worksheet Offset**

**Scenario:**      **Apply Worksheet Offset** **Clear**

**Weighting:**     **Years:**     **Months:**     **Days:**

**Business Day Convention:**

**Worksheet Data**

Worksheet Data								<a href="#">Customize</a>	<a href="#">Find</a>	<a href="#">View All</a>		First		1-12 of 12		Last
	Source Set	Tree Node	Source	Currency	Value Date	Weighting	Offset Days									
1	1. OPENING	OPENING AVAILABLE	BANK BAL FLOAT SD	USD	11/25/2003 	1.00000	5									
2	1. OPENING	OPENING AVAILABLE	BANK BAL SAMEDAY	USD	11/25/2003 	1.00000	5									
3	FIRST PRESENTMENT	OPENING AVAILABLE	BANK BAL FLOAT SD	USD	11/25/2003 	1.00000	5									
4	FIRST PRESENTMENT	OPENING AVAILABLE	BANK BAL SAMEDAY	USD	11/25/2003 	1.00000	5									
5	SECOND PRESENTMENT	OPENING AVAILABLE	BANK BAL FLOAT SD	USD	11/25/2003 	1.00000	5									
6	SECOND PRESENTMENT	OPENING AVAILABLE	BANK BAL SAMEDAY	USD	11/25/2003 	1.00000	5									
7	1. OPENING	TOTAL	BANK BAL FLOAT SD	USD	11/25/2003 	1.00000	5									
8	1. OPENING	TOTAL	BANK BAL SAMEDAY	USD	11/25/2003 	1.00000	5									
9	FIRST PRESENTMENT	TOTAL	BANK BAL FLOAT SD	USD	11/25/2003 	1.00000	5									
10	FIRST PRESENTMENT	TOTAL	BANK BAL SAMEDAY	USD	11/25/2003 	1.00000	5									
11	SECOND PRESENTMENT	TOTAL	BANK BAL FLOAT SD	USD	11/25/2003 	1.00000	5									
12	SECOND PRESENTMENT	TOTAL	BANK BAL SAMEDAY	USD	11/25/2003 	1.00000	5									

**OK** **Cancel**

Copy/Apply Forecasting Rules page

### Worksheet Offset

Specify the search parameters to return data for the Worksheet Data region.

**Business Day Convention**    Select the convention that applies to your scenario, and then enter the number of Years, Months, and Days that you want to extend your worksheet. These numbers can be positive or negative, generating future or historical worksheets.

**Apply Worksheet Offset**    Click to automatically populate fields in the Worksheet Data region with parameters specified in the Worksheet Offset group box.

**Clear**    Click to clear your applied worksheet offsets, and repopulate the Worksheet Data region with the original information.

**OK**    Click to save your worksheet changes and return to the Position Manager Results page.

This button is unavailable until you enter worksheet offset information and click the Apply Worksheet Offset button.

**Note.** The system retains only one historic worksheet per calculated date.

## Scheduling Position Manager

Access the Schedule Position Manager page.

Schedule Position Manager page

### Bind Variable Name

In the Parameters grid is an Application Engine run control function that enables you to specify the variable for which you are setting the value. Select the Bind Variable Name of *Start Date*, and enter the specific date to be calculated in Date. (When you select *START\_DATE*, the Value field changes to the Date field.) You can add records and specify as many bind variable names as are pertinent to the job.

## Exporting the Worksheet with PS/nVision

Access the Position Report Periods page.

PeopleSoft provides a PS/nVision layout with which you can generate an Excel™ file of your Position Manager. The layout uses the TR\_CASH\_POSITION tree to create the file. The PS/nVision layout must be customized to create a spreadsheet based on a different tree.

### Process

Before you use PS/nVision, you must create the time periods for the report. Click to generate the report periods used by PS/nVision; the system updates the page and displays the periods.

## Creating Intraday Bank Reporting Worksheets

This section discusses how to:

- Review same day bank statement information.
- Calculate intraday cash position reporting worksheets.

## Intraday Bank Reporting and Cash Positions

Intraday reporting and cash position functionality included with PeopleSoft Cash Management enable you to monitor your organization's cash position several times in a day. You can establish three cash positions (10 AM, 2 PM, and 4 PM). You then monitor each position's progress during the day by importing updated same bank statement information, making changes and locking down your cash positions as required.

To help you with intraday bank reporting and cash positions, we have added a tree (*INTRADAY\_CASH\_POS*) to the Tree Manager sample data, a worksheet (*INTRADAY\_CASH\_POS*) and two node (*INTRADAY\_INFLOWS* and *INTRADAY\_OUTFLOWS*) to the Position Manager page.

The *INTRADAY\_CASH\_POS* tree consists of the following five nodes:

- Bank Balance.
- Intraday Outflows.
- Intraday Inflows.
- Treasury Cashflows.
- Target Balance.

The *INTRADAY\_CASH\_POS* worksheet corresponds to the *INTRADAY\_CASH\_POS* tree, and is preconfigured with three source sets for 10 AM, 2 PM, and 4 PM. The *INTRADAY\_INFLOWS* and *INTRADAY\_OUTFLOWS* positions are tied to their corresponding tree node. When you select one of these positions to calculate the worksheet, the system derives information from the sources specified for that node. You can then track the intraday activity through the position worksheet calculations.

During the course of a day, you use the Load Electronic Statements feature to load the same day bank statement table with updated information. Using the worksheet's lock feature, you can store any position with its existing current information. When the worksheet is recalculated, existing data in any open "unlocked" positions is overwritten with the updated bank information. For example, you can load the updated bank statement information and lock the positions in this manner:

- Perform the initial daily load of the bank statement table at 10 AM, and lock the 10 AM position.
- Reload the bank statement table at 2 PM (the system recalculates the 2 PM and 4 PM positions), and lock the 2 PM position.
- Perform the final load of the bank statement table at 4 PM (the system recalculates the 4 PM position), and lock the 4 PM position.

You can lock any one position and have the other positions display as unlocked. You can also use one position as the final position for the day—either the current locked position or the last position for the day (the 4 PM position).

## Prerequisites

Before creating position worksheets, you should reconcile bank transactions and review same day bank balance information to identify your true cash flow.

## See Also

*PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Reconciling Statements”

*PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Receiving and Updating Bank Statements,” Updating Current Day Bank Statements

## Pages Used to Create Intraday Cash Position Worksheets

Page Name	Object Name	Navigation	Usage
Current Day Balances	BANK_SDBAL_ENTRY	Banking, Bank Statements, Enter Current Day Statements	Review same day bank balance information that is automatically imported into the system, prior to being used in the intraday cash position worksheet.
Enter Current Day Transactions	BANK_SDSTMT_ENTRY	Banking, Bank Statements, Enter Current Day Statements Select the Current Day Transactions tab.	Review same day bank transaction information that is automatically imported into the system, prior to being used in the intraday cash position worksheet.
Position Manager	POS_IMPCT_MGR	Cash Management, Cash Position, Position Manager	Administer your worksheets from a central location.
Position Manager Options	POS_IMPCT_OPT_PNL	Click Edit on the Position Manager page.	Set up the options for the Position Manager.
Ad-Hoc Position Worksheet	POS_IMPCT_OPT_PNL	Click Create an Ad Hoc Worksheet on the Position Manager page.	Set up ad hoc positions.
Position Manager Results	POS_IMPCT_RSLT_PNL	Click Calculate on the Ad Hoc Position Worksheet page.	Display the results of the calculation on the Position Manager page. This page appears automatically after the calculation is complete.
Position by Source	POS_IMPCT_RSLT_DT1	Click Drill to Detail on the Position Manager Results page.	View the source transactions for the node.
Position Forecasting Rules	POS_FORECAST_RULES	Cash Management, Administer Cash, Position Forecasting Rules	Set up rules for forecasting.
Copy/Apply Forecasting Rules	POS_HIST_FORECAST	Click Copy on the Position Manager Results page.	Generate a copy of a worksheet. To create projected forecasts or modify cash flow amounts, you must create a worksheet copy.

Page Name	Object Name	Navigation	Usage
Schedule Position Manager	TR_AE_RUNCNTL	Cash Management, Cash Position, Schedule Position Manager	Run the Cash Position/Position Monitor process (TR_POS_TOTAL) to schedule the Position Manager to run at specified times.
Position Report Periods	POS_REPORT_PNL	Cash Management, Cash Position, Position Report Periods	Use PS/nVision to generate an Excel file of Position Manager.

## Calculating Intraday Cash Position Reporting Worksheets

Before calculating an intraday cash position, determine if you need to load information into the bank statement table.

See [Chapter 5, “Defining Cash Positions ,” Intraday Bank Reporting and Cash Positions, page 71.](#)

The following example assumes you are working with the 10 AM position.

To calculate an intra-day cash position reporting worksheet:

1. Select the *INTRADAY\_CASH\_POS* Worksheet on the Position Manager page.
2. Select a tree node value for the Position from the following:
  - *INTRADAY INFLOWS*
  - *INTRADAY OUTFLOWS*
  - *OPENING AVAILABLE*
  - *TARGET BALANCE*
  - *TOTAL*
  - *TREASURY CASHFLOWS*
3. Specify *TODAY* for the worksheet Calculation Preferences.
4. Click the Edit button to access the Position Manager Options page.
5. In the Time Horizon Option region, specify a Time Horizon of *Source Set*, and a Source Set of the current (system) date.
6. For the Recalculation Options field, specify the Recalculate Entire Worksheet value.
7. Select the Use Lock Reminder check box, save the page, then click the Return to Position Manager link.
8. Click Calculate on the Position Manager page.
9. On the Position Manager Results page, the bottom row of lock buttons are the Lock All Nodes buttons. Each lock button is associated with a particular time—10:00 AM, 2:00 PM, and 4:00 PM. (Hold your cursor over the button to view the mouseover text.)  
Edit the particular node and click the associated Lock All Nodes button (in this example, the 10 AM node). Save the page.
10. Click the Return to Position Manager link. The system displays the reminder message. Check your locked positions, and click the Return to Position Manager link.

11. Click Calculate on the Position Manager page.
12. Review the calculation results on the Position Manager Results page.

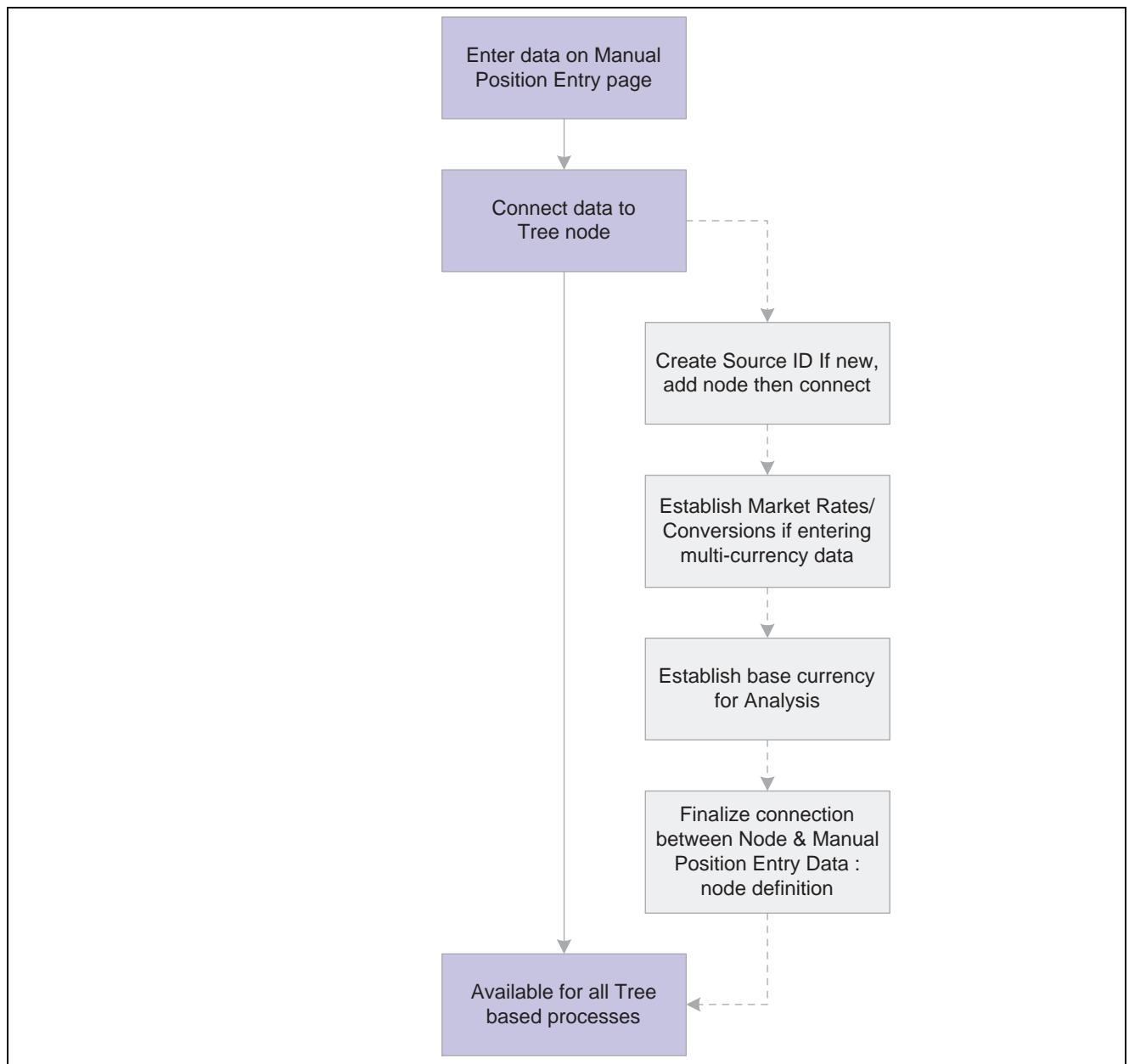
You need to repeat this process to recalculate the worksheet for the next intraday position. To do this, reload the same day bank statements and repeat steps 1–12 for the 2 PM or 4 PM position. This causes the system to refresh the worksheet calculations with the updated same day bank information.

See *PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Receiving and Updating Bank Statements,” Updating Current Day Bank Statements.

---

## Manually Creating Position Worksheet Data

With Manual Position Entry, you enter data manually, create a source over it, and then place the source on a particular tree node. Here is an overview of handling Manual Position Entry:



Manual Position Entry process

This section discusses how to:

- Enter manual position information.
- Define additional search criteria.
- Copy data forward.
- Enter additional manual position entry information.

## Pages Used to Manually Create Position Worksheet Data

Page Name	Object Name	Navigation	Usage
Enter Manual Position	POS_GENERIC_ENTRY	Cash Management, Cash Position, Enter Manual Position	Search existing Position Manager data, and apply tree functionality to ad hoc data. This page is used to capture the data and begin structuring it so that you can connect it to an existing tree.
Additional Search Criteria	POS_GEN_ENT_SRCH	Click Additional Search Criteria on the Manual Position Entry page.	Increase the granularity of your search options.
Copy Data Forward	POS_GEN_ENT_COPY	Click Copy on the Manual Position Entry page.	Specify date and repeat parameters in copying forward rows of position entry information.
Additional Information	POS_GENERIC_ENTRY	Select the Additional Information tab on the Enter Manual Position page.	Add supplementary information to the manual position entry.

## Entering Manual Position Information

Access the Enter Manual Position page and select the Entry Details tab.

**Enter Manual Position**

**Search Criteria**

SetID: %	<input type="button" value="Search"/>	Unit: %	<input type="button" value="Search"/>	Value Date: <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Search"/>	<input type="button" value="Additional Search Criteria"/>
Category: %				Currency Code: %	<input type="button" value="Search"/> <input type="button" value="Clear"/> <input type="button" value="Copy"/>

**Manual Position Entry**

Entry Details								Additional Information		Customize   Find   View All   <input type="button" value="Search"/>		First	1-10 of 14	Last	
*SetID	*Unit	*Category	*Value Date	*Reference	*Amount	*Currency									
SHARE	FRA01	FRA MFG	07/31/2000	FRA MFG RESULTS	156853.00	FRF	<input type="button" value="Search"/>	<input type="button" value="New"/>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>					
SHARE	GBR01	GBR MFG	07/31/2000	GBR MFG RESULTS	65982.00	GBP	<input type="button" value="Search"/>	<input type="button" value="New"/>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>					
SHARE	CAN01	CAN MFG	07/31/2000	CAN MFG RESULTS	1652985.00	CAD	<input type="button" value="Search"/>	<input type="button" value="New"/>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>					
SHARE	DEU01	DEU MFG	07/31/2000	DEU MFG RESULTS	1562985.00	DEM	<input type="button" value="Search"/>	<input type="button" value="New"/>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>					
SHARE	AUS01	AUS MFG	07/31/2000	AUS MFG RESULTS	1526589.00	AUD	<input type="button" value="Search"/>	<input type="button" value="New"/>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>					
SHARE	US001	AR	10/24/2000	AR EAST REGION	3250000.00	USD	<input type="button" value="Search"/>	<input type="button" value="New"/>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>					
SHARE	US001	AR	10/24/2000	AR WEST REGION	3150000.00	USD	<input type="button" value="Search"/>	<input type="button" value="New"/>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>					
SHARE	US001	AP	10/24/2000	AP EAST REGION	-3000000.00	USD	<input type="button" value="Search"/>	<input type="button" value="New"/>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>					
SHARE	US001	AP	10/24/2000	AP WEST REGION	-2550000.00	USD	<input type="button" value="Search"/>	<input type="button" value="New"/>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>					
SHARE	US001	OTHER	10/24/2000	MISC PROJECTED	-50000.00	USD	<input type="button" value="Search"/>	<input type="button" value="New"/>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>					

Enter Manual Position page

**Additional Search Criteria** Click the link to narrow your search by selecting supplementary search categories.

**Category** Displays another name for the target tree node.

**Copy** Click to specify parameters in copying forward rows of position entry information.

## Defining Additional Search Criteria

Access the Additional Search Criteria page.

**From Date and To Date** Specify a date range for your data searches. Alternatively, you can specify to search on a particular Day of the Week, Month, or Day of Month.

## Copying Data Forward

Access the Copy Data Forward page.

**Date From and Date To** Enter a date range to copy cells of position entry information into the manual position worksheet. You can also specify the Number of Times to Repeat the copied information.

## Entering Additional Manual Position Entry Information

Access the Manual Position Entry page and select the Additional Information tab.

---

## Generating Cash Management Position Reports

Once you have created your cash position worksheet, you can generate reports to analyze the position data.

## Pages Used to Generate Cash Position Reports

Page Name	Object Name	Navigation	Usage
Actual vs Projected by Business Unit	RUN_TRC1004	Cash Management, Reports, Actual v Projected by BU	Generate the Actual vs. Projected by Business Unit report (TRC1004). Use the report to compare actual versus projected cash positions by a specified business unit.
Actual vs Projected by Position	RUN_TRC4060	Cash Management, Reports, Actual v Projected by Position	Generate the Actual vs Projected by Position report (TRC4060). Use the report to compare actual versus projected cash positions by a specified value date.
Actual vs Projected by Account	RUN_TRC1009	Cash Management, Reports, Actual v Projected by Account	Generate the Actual vs Projected by Account report (TRC1009). Use the report (broken down by account) to compare positions.

# CHAPTER 6

## Managing Bilateral Netting

This chapter provides an overview of bilateral netting, discusses the prerequisite tasks, and discusses how to:

- Set up bilateral nets.
- Select nets automatically.
- Create nets manually.
- Adjust manually netted information.
- Administer nets.
- Process multicurrency nets.
- Close nets.
- Inquire on netting information.

---

### Understanding the Bilateral Netting Process

Bilateral netting is a process by which two parties—vendor and client to each other—reduce or aggregate the overall number of transactions between them. This decreases actual transaction volume between the two parties. It also decreases the amount of accounting activity and associated business costs (for example, banking fees).

This chapter discusses how to configure, define, and process netting transactions. You can:

- Select the vendors and customers involved in a netting relationship.
- Define the rules, contracts, sequence order, and settlement method of a net.
- Generate inquiries and reports on your netting data.

There are two netting closing methods: *partial* and *full*.

- In partial netting, all items are netted to zero (0), and no payment or receipt of funds is done. You must run Pay Cycle Manager to make any adjustments or changes to the vouchers. Any voucher or item balance that is remaining is handled separately in PeopleSoft Payables or PeopleSoft Receivables.

Only the matching balance is paid off during partial netting, leaving some receivables items or payables items open. For example, if the total amount of all payables items participating in a netting cycle is more than the total amount of all receivables items, all receivables items are paid (or closed). The total amount applied to the receivables items is then used to pay individual payables items until this amount reaches zero. Likewise, if the total amount of all receivables items participating in a netting cycle is higher than the total amount of all payables items, all the payables items are paid. The total amount applied to the payables items are then be used to pay individual receivables items until this amount reaches zero.

- With full netting, you pay or receive all voucher items that are due.

During full netting processing, all receivables and payables items participating in the netting cycle are paid, and a new item is created for the remaining balance. This means that if the total amount of all payables items participating in any one netting cycle is more than the total amount of all participating receivables items, the system automatically creates a new receivables item (an invoice). If the total amount of all receivables items is more than the total amount of all payables items, the system creates a new payables item (a voucher).

---

**Note.** PeopleSoft delivers and supports only partial bilateral netting functionality. However, you can adapt the application to handle full bilateral netting functionality (though PeopleSoft will not support this configuration). In addition, when using full bilateral netting functionality, you can also optionally activate the value added tax (VAT) functionality to calculate VAT transactions.

---

Here is an example of partial bilateral netting:

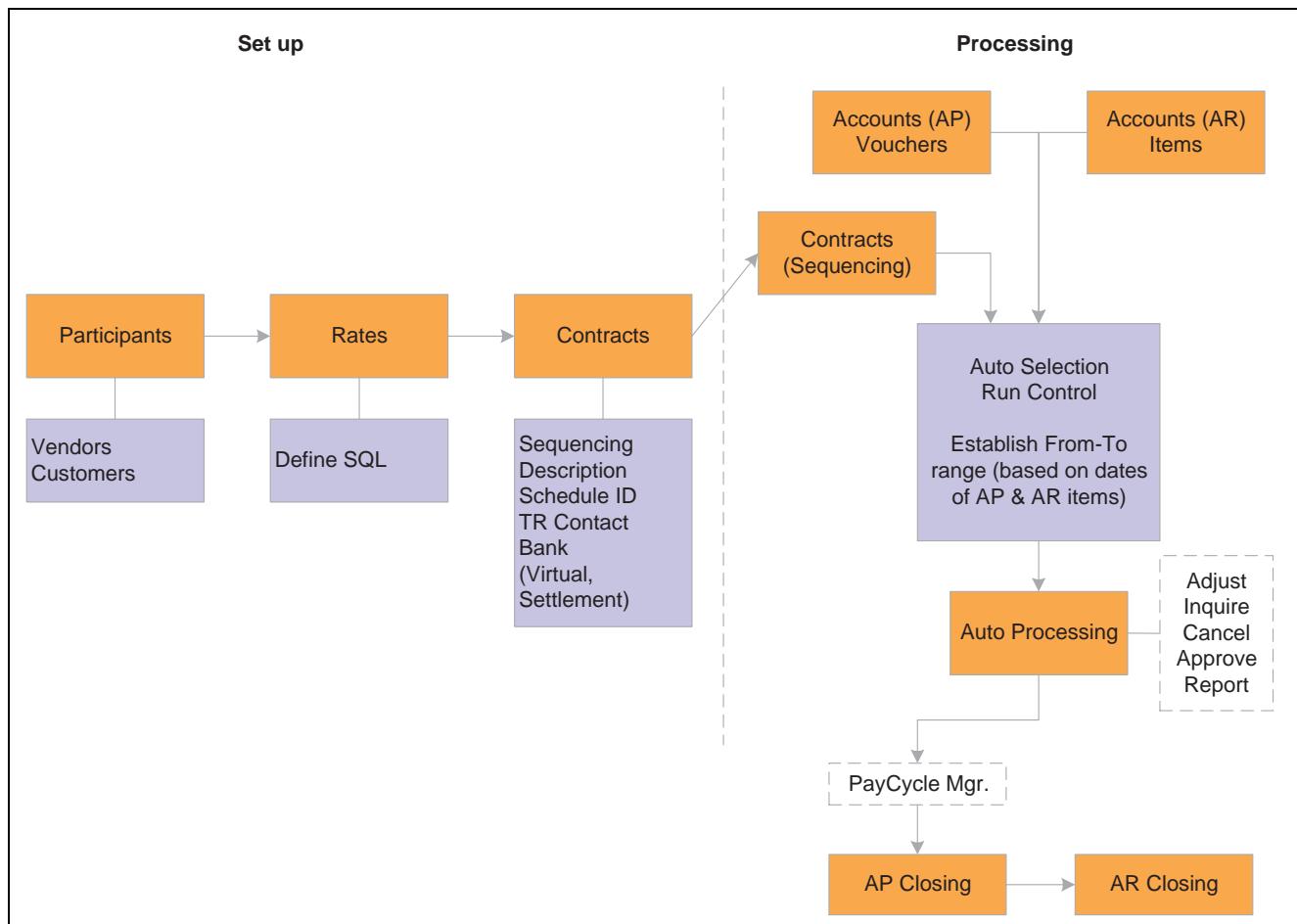
Company A is both a client and a vendor of Company B and holds Accounts Payable (AP) and Accounts Receivable (AR) line items in relation to Company B. The two companies set up a contractual netting relationship, modifying their typical accounting, to enter into this protocol. They agree on particular intervals to conduct netting and zero out their respective accounts.

Company A's books contain the following line-item amounts:

AP	AR
100	150
250	50
Total: 350	Total: 200
<200>	
Net: 150	

Without netting, Company A would have conducted four transactions to address the two Accounts Payable and two Accounts Receivables line items. Instead, their single outstanding balance to pay off and zero out after processing is 150. Using this example, Company B's books would be a mirror image of Company A's.

This is a simple example, but if there are hundred or thousands of transactions happening between organizations, there can be a considerable decrease in transactional activity and attendant fees. This graphic illustrates the bilateral netting process.



Overview of the bilateral netting process

## See Also

*PeopleSoft Purchasing 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Running Document Tolerances”

*PeopleSoft Receivables 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Entering Payments,” Bilateral Netting

---

## Prerequisites

Before using netting, you must define your:

- General Ledger business units.
- Payables Vendors, Vendor IDs, and business units.
- Receivables Customer IDs and business units.
- Market rates and netting account currency codes, to facilitate multicurrency netting.
- Netting accounts.

In addition, before defining a bilateral netting relationship, you must set up the following in PeopleSoft Payables and PeopleSoft Receivables:

1. Enter a voucher on the Vouchers page in PeopleSoft Payables.
2. Enter an invoice on the Online Pending Item Entry page in PeopleSoft Receivables or interface an invoice from your billing application into PeopleSoft Receivables.
3. Run the Receivables Update process (AR\_UPDATE) using the Receivables Update page.

### See Also

*PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Setting Up External, Internal, and Netting Accounts,” Defining Netting Accounts

*PeopleSoft General Ledger 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Defining Your Operational Structure,” Defining PeopleSoft General Ledger Business Units

*PeopleSoft Receivables 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Posting and Unposting Groups,” Running Receivable Update

---

## Common Elements in this Chapter

<b>Closing Method</b>	Select <i>Partial</i> , the delivered default value.
<b>Contact</b>	Specify the financial contacts for a netting relationship.
<b>Contract ID</b>	Enter the netting contract identification number.
<b>Customer ID</b>	Enter the unique identifier code for a customer.
<b>GL Unit</b>	Enter the General Ledger business unit.
<b>Netting Rule ID</b>	Enter the netting rule identification code.
<b>Participant ID</b>	Enter the netting participant identification code.
<b>Remit Vendor</b>	Enter the vendor payee.
<b>Schedule SetID</b>	Select the correct SetID to establish the interval when the netting executes.
<b>Settlement Date</b>	Specify the actual date of the settlement payment.
<b>Vendor ID</b>	Enter a unique identifier code for a vendor.

### See Also

[Chapter 6, “Managing Bilateral Netting,” Understanding the Bilateral Netting Process, page 79](#)

---

## Setting Up Bilateral Nets

To define netting information, use the following components:

- Netting Contracts component (NET\_CONTRACT).
- Netting Exclusion Parameters component (NET\_EXCL\_PARM).

- Netting Participants component (NET\_PARTICIPANT).
- Netting Rules component (NET\_NETTING\_RULES).

This section discusses the steps to set up bilateral nets:

1. Define participant relationships.
2. (Optional) Add multiple vendors.
3. (Optional) Add multiple customers.
4. Define netting rules with SQL statements.
5. Enter primary information for netting contracts.
6. Enter settlement information for netting contracts.
7. Define voucher netting exclusion parameters.

## **Understanding Voucher Netting Exclusion**

You can define parameters to exclude certain vouchers from payment. The netting exclusion functionality is built to accommodate certain US Federal Government requirements on voucher payments (JFMIP requirement PMC-31, "...allow for the exclusion of payments from agency offset based on user-defined criteria including funding source, object class, vendor type, and vendor number."), but any organization can use this feature to exclude vouchers from netting, based on defined parameters. Though you generally define netting exclusion parameters during the setup phase of voucher payment implementation, you can create or modify these definitions at any time.

This functionality also takes advantage of PeopleSoft's ChartField Utility process. As chartfields can be renamed, and made active or inactive, the setup of these user-defined parameters is dynamic to enable you to select the appropriate chartfield fieldname and its corresponding values. In addition, you can define multiple sets of exclusion parameters, by defining multiple rows per Exclusion ID, and/or defining multiple Exclusion IDs.

Values entered on the Netting Exclusion Parameters page are stored and used at voucher save time to determine if the voucher should be excluded from the netting process between PeopleSoft Payables and PeopleSoft Receivables. If an exclusion parameter definition has been created, and a payment falls within the exclusion and effective date parameters, then the payment is excluded from the PeopleSoft Payables and PeopleSoft Receivables netting process and paid in full. (The system changes the internal voucher netting value to N to indicate the voucher is not applicable to netting.) This applies to payments created normally through the PeopleSoft Pay Cycle process.

Though the Exclude from Netting Parameters and the Netting Rule Definition pages share a similar purpose—defining rules or parameters for the voucher netting process—their results are different. The netting exclusion functionality excludes matching vouchers from payment by setting the internal netting flag to N (not applicable for netting). The netting rules functionality excludes vouchers based on the criteria defined in the rules.

---

**Note.** Netting exclusion parameters apply to the entire voucher—not just a particular part of the voucher. If a single data element (or "piece") of a voucher meets the exclusion requirements, the entire voucher is excluded. For example, if a voucher has 100 lines with 200 distributions, and only one distribution qualifies for netting exclusion. In this scenario, the entire voucher and payment schedule—all 200 distributions—is excluded from netting.

---

## See Also

*PeopleSoft Payables 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Establishing Pay Cycles”

*PeopleSoft Payables 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Processing Pay Cycles”

## Prerequisites

To use the Exclude from Netting functionality with vouchers, you must do the following:

- Define vendors as “netting vendors,” using the Apply Netting option on the Vendor Information - Payment Options page.
- Create vouchers using defined netting vendors.

## See Also

*PeopleSoft Payables 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Entering and Processing Vouchers Online: General Voucher Entry Information,” Scheduling and Creating Voucher Payments

## Pages Used to Set Up Bilateral Nets

Page Name	Object Name	Navigation	Usage
Netting Participants	NET_PARTICIPANT	Cash Management, Administer Cash, Netting Participants	Define the vendor and customer relationships involved in netting.
Add Multiple Vendors	NET_VENDOR_ADD	Click Add Multiple Vendors on the Participant Definition page.	Search and select multiple vendors associated with a business unit to add to the netting relationship.
Add Multiple Customers	NET_CUSTOMER_ADD	Click Add Multiple Customers on the Participant Definition page.	Search and select multiple customers associated with a business unit to add to the netting relationship.
Netting Rules	NET_NETTING_RULES	Cash Management, Administer Cash, Netting Rules	Enter a SQL statement that will be included into the Application Engine Netting selection logic.
Netting Contracts - Primary Information	NET_CONTRACT_PRIM	Cash Management, Administer Cash, Netting Contracts	Define the contracts that govern your bilateral netting. Capture the relevant accounting information as well as the SQL, the parties to contact as necessary, and the schedule on which netting is to run.
Netting Contracts - Settlement Information	NET_CONTRACT_STL	Cash Management, Administer Cash, Netting Contracts  Select the Settlement Information tab.	Define all settlement instruction information for a netting contract.
Netting Exclusion Parameters	NET_EXCL_PARM	Cash Management, Administer Cash, Netting Exclusion Parameters	Define parameters used to automatically exclude certain payments from the AP and AR netting process.

## Defining Participant Relationships

Access the Netting Participants page.

### Netting Participants

**Netting Participants** Find | View All | First 1 of 1 Last

Participant ID: <input type="text" value="PPT01"/>	*Description: <input type="text" value="Netting Participant - US001"/>	<span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px 5px;">+ </span>
*Effective Date: <input style="width: 100px; border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px 5px 2px 10px; border-right: none; border-radius: 5px 0 0 5px;" type="text" value="01/01/1900"/>	Status: <input style="width: 100px; border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px 5px 2px 10px; border-left: none; border-radius: 0 5px 5px 0;" type="text" value="Active"/>	*GL Unit: <input type="text" value="US001"/>

**Vendors** Customize | Find | View All | First 1-4 of 6 Last

*AP Unit	*Vendor ID	Name	+
US001	USA00000001	Bay Area Electric	
US001	USA00000002	East Bay Travel	
US001	USA00000003	Telecomm for East Bay	
US002	USA00000001	Bay Area Electric	

Add Multiple Vendors

**Customers** Customize | Find | View All | First 1-4 of 6 Last

*AR Unit	*Customer ID	Name	+
US001	USA01	New World Outdoor Equipment, Inc.	
US001	USA02	Cracker Barrell Restaurant	
US001	USA03	Highland Hospital	
US002	USA01	New World Outdoor Equipment, Inc.	

Add Multiple Customers

Netting Participants page

**GL Unit** (General Ledger business unit)

For reporting purposes, you must select the unit that is targeted by these transactions, because the transactions affect balances at the general ledger level.

## Vendors

**AP Unit** (Payables business unit)

Select the unit that houses the vendors that are entering the netting relationship, and specify the Vendor ID.

**Add Multiple Vendors**

Click to access the Add Multiple Vendors page, and make this relationship a one-to-many or many-to-many relationship (for example, you might want to net the transactions of subsidiaries to a corporation).

## Customers

**AR Unit** (Receivables business unit)

Select the unit that houses the customers that are entering the netting relationship, and specify the Customer ID.

**Add Multiple Customers**

Click to access the Add Multiple Customers page, and make this relationship a one-to-many or many-to-many relationship (for example, you might want to net the transactions of subsidiaries to a corporation).

## Adding Multiple Vendors

Access the Add Multiple Vendors page.

### Add Multiple Vendors

**Participant Definition**

<b>Participant ID:</b>	PPT01	<b>Description:</b>	Netting Participant - US001		
<b>Effective Date:</b>	01/01/1900	<b>Status:</b>	Active	<b>GL Unit:</b>	US001
<b>Add Vendors From:</b>	US026 <input type="button" value="Find"/>	US026 MASSACHUSETTS - DIV 6	<b>SetID:</b>	SHARE	

**Vendors**

Vendors				<a href="#">Customize</a>	<a href="#">Find</a>	<a href="#">View 100</a>		First	1-4 of 294		Last
Select	Vendor ID	Name	City								
<input type="checkbox"/>	0000000044	Mel's Diner	Phoenix								
<input type="checkbox"/>	0000000045	ven1	san ramon								
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	AUS00000001	Computers Unlimited	City 1								
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	AUS00000002	Northern Computers	City 1								

Add Multiple Vendors page

**Add Vendors From** Specify a business unit from which to select vendors.

**Add Vendors** Select vendors and click this button to add them as participants.

## Adding Multiple Customers

Access the Add Multiple Customers page.

### Add Multiple Customers

**Participant Definition**

<b>Participant ID:</b>	PPT01	<b>Description:</b>	Netting Participant - US001		
<b>Effective Date:</b>	01/01/1900	<b>Status:</b>	Active	<b>GL Unit:</b>	US001
<b>Add Customers From:</b>	CMSEM <input type="button" value="Find"/>	CMSEM Cash Semi Recon	<b>SetID:</b>	SHARE	

**Customers**

Customers				<a href="#">Customize</a>	<a href="#">Find</a>	<a href="#">View 100</a>		First	1-4 of 247		Last
Select	Customer ID	Name	City								
<input type="checkbox"/>	BLG04	ACORDATA Belgique	Diegem								
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	NLD04	Adnetix	Amsterdam								
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	1004	Advanced Consulting	Quincy								
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	1008	Adventure 54	Tucson								

Add Multiple Customers page

**Add Customers From** Specify a business unit from which to select customers.

**Add Multiple Customers** Select customers and click this button to add them as participants.

## Defining Netting Rules with SQL Statements

Access the Netting Rules page.

**Netting Rules**

<b>Netting Rule ID:</b>	ALL	<b>*Description:</b>	Net all
<b>Receivable SQL</b>			
<pre>AND I.BAL_AMT&gt;=0</pre> 			
<b>Payable SQL</b>			
<pre>AND XREF.PYMNT_GROSS_AMT&gt;=0</pre> 			

Netting Rules page

**Receivable SQL and  
Payable SQL**

Enter the appropriate SQL statements to set up the mechanics of the net, and to further define and/or limit which open items are selected. For example: “where I.DEPARTMENT equals ‘ABC.’”



Click to add comments regarding SQL statements for the respective (Receivable or Payable) edit box.

## Entering Primary Information for Netting Contracts

Access the Netting Contracts - Primary Information page.

Contract Definition

Contract ID: JPNNET01      \*Description: Netting Contract

\*Effective Date: 01/01/1900      \*Status: Active

**Primary Information**

Pre Approval Flag  \*Closing Method: Partial

\*Participant ID: PPT02      Outdoor Operation - JPN

Netting Rule ID:

\*Contact: J001      Bell,William

\*Schedule SetID: SHARE      \*Schedule: EOM      End of Month

**Notes**

Netting Contracts - Primary Information page

## Primary Information

**Pre Approval Flag**      Select to indicate the netting contract is already approved.

**Netting Advice Required**      Select to notify a contact when netting is run.

**Schedules**      Specify the netting run schedule for the specified Schedule SetID.

 Click View Participants to view participants of the specified Participant ID.

 Click View Rules to view rules of the specified Netting Rule ID.

 Click View Contacts to view contact information for the specified Contact ID.

 Click View Schedules to view schedule information for the specified Schedule.

## See Also

[Chapter 6, “Managing Bilateral Netting,” Defining Participant Relationships, page 85](#)

[Chapter 6, “Managing Bilateral Netting,” Defining Netting Rules with SQL Statements, page 88](#)

*PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Setting Up Banks and Counterparties,” Defining Financial Contacts

## Entering Settlement Information for Netting Contracts

Access the Netting Contracts - Settlement Information page.

Primary Information	Settlement Information
<b>Contract Definition - Settlement Instructions</b> <div style="text-align: right;">Find   View All   First   1 of 1   Last</div>	
<b>Contract ID:</b> JPNNET01	<b>Description:</b> Netting Contract
<b>Netting Bank</b>	
*Netting Bank SetID:	SHARE  *Bank: NET03  *Account: NET3  1234567
<b>Payables</b>	
*Disbursement Bank SetID:	SHARE  *Bank: JPNBK  *Account: CHCK  7813008
*Vendor SetID:	SHARE  *Vendor: JPN0000001  Nishimura Industries
*Location:	MAIN  *Seq Nbr: 1  7647182
*Payment Method:	EFT  *Sequence: By Accounting Date (FIFO)  ACCOUNTING_DT
<b>Receivables</b>	
*Payment Method:	Check (Check, EFT,  *Sequence: By Accounting Date (FIFO)  ACCOUNTING_DT
*Deposit Unit:	JPN01  JAPAN OPERATIONS

Netting Contracts - Settlement Information page

**Netting Bank SetID**

Assign a netting SetID; then select the Bank and Account for the netting activities. The netting bank is a virtual bank account: no funds are actually paid into or out of the netting account. It is debited and credited by the netted amount of the AP and AR transactions.

**Disb Bank**

**SetID**(disbursement bank setID)

Select from the available external banks, and specify the settle through Bank and Account.

**Vendor SetID**

Assign a vendor SetID. In the Vendor field, designate the vendor involved in the net and assign a Location and Seq Nbr (sequence number). You enter the vendor ID and sequence number to associate the default bank with that vendor (this is required to support certain payment methods).

**Payment Method**

For the Payables group box, specify if payments are submitted by *Automated Clearing House, Direct Debit, EFT, Manual Check, System Check, or Wire Report*.

For the Receivables group box, specify if payments are received by *Check (Check, EFT, etc.), Direct Debit, or Draft*.

**Sequence**

Select the order in which balances will net, either: *By Account Date (FIFO)* (first in first out), *By Accounting Date (LIFO)* (last in first out), *By Due Date (FIFO)*, *By Due Date (LIFO)*, *By Voucher*, *Highest Gross Balance*, or *Smallest Gross Balance*.

**Deposit Unit**

Define which business unit will receive payment after the net.



Click View Netting Account to view detailed information for the specified netting account.



Click View Disbursement Bank to view detailed information for the specified external bank account.



Click View Vendor Bank to view detailed information for the vendor location.

## Excluding Vouchers from Netting

Access the Netting Exclusion Parameters page.

Select the parameter for excluding the voucher.

When you select Vendor ID, also specify a Vendor name and optionally, a Location.

When you select Vendor Classification, also select a Classification option of *Attorney*, *Employee*, *HRMS*, or *Supplier*.

In the Charfield Exclusion Parameters region, specify a ChartField and corresponding value on which to base the netting exclusion.

---

**Note.** You can only specify one value per defined chartfield name.

---

## Selecting Nets Automatically

Define processing parameters and automatically select your nets using the Automatic Netting Selection process (TR\_NET\_ASEL).

### Pages Used to Automatically Select Nets

Page Name	Object Name	Navigation	Usage
Automatic Netting Selection	NET_AUTO_RQST	Cash Management, Settlements, Bi-Lateral Netting, Automatic Netting Selection	Set up an automatic process to run bilateral nets.

## Generating the Automatic Netting Selection Process

Access the Automatic Netting Selection page.

**Automatic Netting Selection**

Run Control ID: 1099\_COPYB [Report Manager](#) [Process Monitor](#) [Run](#)

---

\*Start Due Date:  [SHARE](#) [SEARCH](#)

\*End Due Date:  [SHARE](#) [SEARCH](#)

\*Netting Date:  [SHARE](#) [SEARCH](#)

\*Schedule SetID:  [SHARE](#) [SEARCH](#)

\*Schedule ID:  [SHARE](#) [SEARCH](#)

\*Settlement Date:  [SHARE](#) [SEARCH](#)

[Contracts for this Schedule](#) [Netting Inquiry](#)

Automatic Netting Selection page

**Contracts for this Schedule** Click to access the Review Netting Contracts page, and view all contracts associated with the specified Schedule ID.

**Netting Inquiry** Click to access the Netting Inquiry page, and view information for the associated Netting Reference ID.

When the Automatic Netting Selection process is complete, use the Administer Netting page to verify and modify the netted information.

### See Also

*PeopleTools PeopleBook: PeopleSoft Process Scheduler*

[Chapter 6, “Managing Bilateral Netting,” Administering Nets, page 104](#)

---

## Creating Nets Manually

This section discusses how to:

1. Enter primary netting information.
2. Define the settlement instructions.
3. Set up the payables leg.
4. (Optional) Add multiple vouchers to the payables leg.
5. Set up the receivables leg.

6. (Optional) Add multiple items to the receivables leg.

## Common Elements in this Section

<b>Add Multiple Items</b>	Click to add multiple vouchers from a specified business Unit and Vendor ID to your bilateral net.
<b>Request Status</b>	Displays either <i>WIP</i> (work in progress) or <i>Submitted</i> .
<b>Total AP Txns(transactions)</b>	Total number of Payables transaction items.
<b>Total AR Txns(transactions)</b>	Total number of Receivables transaction items.

## Pages Used to Manually Create Nets

Page Name	Object Name	Navigation	Usage
Manual Select Netting - Manual Selection	NET_MANUAL_RQST	Cash Management, Settlements, Bi-Lateral Netting, Manual Select Netting	Enter primary information a bilateral net
Manual Select Netting - Settlement Inst (settlement instructions)	NET_MANUAL_RQST1	Cash Management, Settlements, Bi-Lateral Netting, Manual Select Netting Select the Settlement Inst tab.	Set up your settlement instructions.
Manual Select Netting - Payables	NET_MAN_RQST_AP	Cash Management, Settlements, Bi-Lateral Netting, Manual Select Netting Select the Payables tab on the Manual Selection page.	Set up the payables leg of a bilateral net.
Enter Manual Selection - Add Multiple Vouchers	NET_VOUCHER_ADD	Click Add Multiple Vouchers on the Manual Select Netting - Payables page.	Add multiple vouchers from one business unit and vendor ID to your bilateral net.
Manual Select Netting - Receivables	NET_MAN_RQST_AR	Cash Management, Settlements, Bi-Lateral Netting, Manual Select Netting Select the Receivables tab on the Manual Selection page.	Set up the receivables leg of a bilateral net.
Enter Manual Selection - Add Multiple Items	NET_ITEM_ADD	Click Add Multiple Items on the Manual Select Netting - Receivables page.	Add multiple vouchers from one business unit and customer ID to your bilateral net.

## Entering Primary Information

Access the Manual Select Netting - Manual Selection page

<b>Manual Selection</b>	<b>Settlement Inst</b>	<b>Payables</b>	<b>Receivables</b>
<b>Netting Reference ID:</b> NEXT		<b>Netting Date:</b> 11/12/2003 <input type="button" value="b1"/>	<b>Request Status:</b> WIP
<b>Primary Information</b>			
<b>*Closing Method:</b>	Partial <input type="button" value="▼"/>	<b>*Description:</b> LEBLANC0048	<b>*GL Unit:</b> BLG01 <input type="button" value="🔍"/>
<b>*Contact:</b>	00001 <input type="button" value="🔍"/> <input type="button" value="b1"/>	Smith,Alfred	<b>Settlement Date:</b> 11/28/2003 <input type="button" value="b1"/>
<b>*Netting Currency:</b>	BEF <input type="button" value="🔍"/>	Belgian Franc	<b>Base Currency:</b> BEF Belgian Franc
<b>Netting Results</b>			
<b>Total Payable Amount:</b>	0	<b>Total AP Txns:</b>	0 <input type="button" value="Submit"/>
<b>Total Receipt Amount:</b>	0	<b>Total AR Txns:</b>	0
<b>Balance Amount:</b>	0		
<b>Netted Amount:</b>	0		

Manual Select Netting - Manual Selection page

**Netting Date** Displays the effective date of the net.

**Netting Currency** Select a netting currency. The system converts all amounts and displays them in this defined netting currency.

**Base Currency** Displays the base currency of the selected GL Unit.

**Submit** Click to submit the net.

---

**Note.** Prior to submitting the net, you must complete the other pages in this component.

---

## Defining Settlement Instructions

Access the Manual Select Netting - Settlement Instructions page.

The screenshot shows the 'Manual Selection' page for 'Settlement Inst'. The top navigation bar includes 'Manual Selection', 'Settlement Inst' (which is selected and highlighted in blue), 'Payables', and 'Receivables'. The main content area is divided into several sections:

- Netting Bank:** Contains fields for 'Net Bank SetID' (with a 'SHARE' button, a magnifying glass icon, and a clipboard icon), 'Bank' (NET01), 'Account' (NET2), and a value '0600-4500602' followed by a 'Check Acct' button.
- Disbursement Bank:** Contains fields for 'Disbursement Bank SetID' (with a 'SHARE' button, a magnifying glass icon, and a clipboard icon), 'Bank' (BLBNK), 'Account' (CHCK), and a value '0347134' followed by a 'Check Acct' button.
- Vendor Bank:** Contains fields for 'Vendor SetID' (with a 'SHARE' button, a magnifying glass icon, and a clipboard icon), 'Vendor' (BLG0000004), and a value 'Elektro Industries'. It also includes 'Location' (MAIN) and 'Seq Nbr' (1).
- Payment Methods:** Contains dropdown menus for 'Payment Method - Payable' (set to 'System Check') and 'Payment Method - Receivable' (set to 'Check (Check, EFT, etc.)'). It also includes a field for 'Deposit Unit' with a magnifying glass icon.

Manual Select Netting - Settlement Instructions page

**Netting Bank**

Click to select your netting bank SetID, and specify the bank and account.

**Disbursement Bank**

Click to select your disbursement bank ID, and specify the bank and account.

**Vendor Bank**

Click the link to select your vendor bank ID. Enter the Vendor, Location, and Sequence Nbr (sequence number).

**Payment Method-Payable**Select *Automated Clearing House, Direct Debit, EFT, Manual Check, System Check, or Wire Report*.**Payment Method-Receivable**Select *Check, Direct Debit, or Draft*.**Deposit Unit**

Define which business unit will receive payment after the net.

**See Also**[Chapter 6, "Managing Bilateral Netting," Entering Settlement Information for Netting Contracts, page 89](#)

## Setting Up the Payables Leg

Access the Manual Select Netting - Payables page.

Manual Selection Settlement Inst **Payables** Receivables

**Enter Manual Selection**

<b>Netting Reference ID:</b> NEXT	<b>Netting Date:</b> 11/12/2003	<b>Request Status:</b> WIP
<b>Total Payable Amount:</b>	0 <b>Total AP Txns:</b>	1 <b>Currency:</b> BEF
<b>Total Receipt Amount:</b>	0 <b>Total AR Txns:</b>	0

**Payable Transactions**

Customize   Find   View All    First  1 of 1  Last					
Unit	Voucher ID	Payments	Remit Vendor	Currency	Gross Amt
BLG01			0		0.000

[Add Multiple Vouchers](#)

Manual Select Netting - Payables page



Click Voucher Detail to access the PeopleSoft Payables Voucher Detail page and view information for the voucher line item.

**Refresh**

When you are finished entering payable transaction items, click to update Total Payment Amount.

## Adding Multiple Vouchers to the Payables Leg

Access the Enter Manual Selection - Add Multiple Vouchers page.

After you enter a business Unit and Vendor ID, select each voucher that you want to add and click Add.

## Setting Up the Receivables Leg

Access the Manual Select Netting - Receivables page.

Manual Selection	Settlement Inst	Payables	Receivables																																																
<b>Enter Manual Selection</b>																																																			
<b>Netting Reference ID:</b> NEXT		<b>Netting Date:</b> 11/12/2003	<b>Request Status:</b> WIP																																																
<b>Total Payable Amount:</b>		<b>0 Total AP Txns:</b>	<b>1 Currency:</b> BEF																																																
<b>Total Receipt Amount:</b>		<b>0 Total AR Txns:</b>	<b>0</b>																																																
<input type="button" value="Refresh"/>																																																			
<b>Receivable Transactions</b>																																																			
<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="2"></th> <th colspan="2"></th> <th colspan="2"></th> <th colspan="2"></th> <th colspan="2"></th> <th colspan="2"></th> </tr> <tr> <th colspan="2"><b>Unit</b></th> <th colspan="2"><b>Customer ID</b></th> <th colspan="2"><b>Item ID</b></th> <th colspan="2"><b>Line</b></th> <th colspan="2"><b>Item Balance</b></th> <th colspan="2"><b>Currency</b></th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td colspan="2">BLG01</td> <td colspan="2"> <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Search"/> </td> <td colspan="2"> <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Add"/> </td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="2"></td> <td colspan="2"></td> <td colspan="2"></td> <td colspan="2"></td> <td colspan="2"> <input type="text" value="0.000"/> </td> <td colspan="2"></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>																<b>Unit</b>		<b>Customer ID</b>		<b>Item ID</b>		<b>Line</b>		<b>Item Balance</b>		<b>Currency</b>		BLG01		<input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Search"/>		<input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Add"/>										<input type="text" value="0.000"/>									
<b>Unit</b>		<b>Customer ID</b>		<b>Item ID</b>		<b>Line</b>		<b>Item Balance</b>		<b>Currency</b>																																									
BLG01		<input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Search"/>		<input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Search"/>		<input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Search"/>		<input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Search"/>		<input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Add"/>																																									
								<input type="text" value="0.000"/>																																											
<input type="button" value="Customize"/> <input type="button" value="Find"/> <input type="button" value="View All"/> <input type="button" value="First"/> <input type="button" value="1 of 1"/> <input type="button" value="Last"/>																																																			
<input type="button" value="Add Multiple Items"/>																																																			

Manual Select Netting - Receivables page



Click Show Item Detail to access the PeopleSoft Receivables Item Maintenance page, and view information for the receivables line item.

**Refresh**

When you are finished entering receivable transaction items, to update Total Receipt Amount.

## Adding Multiple Items to the Receivables Leg

Access the Enter Manual Selection - Add Multiple Items page.

After you enter a business Unit and Customer ID, select each item that you want to add and click Add.

---

## Adjusting Manually Netted Information

After creating manual bilateral nets you'll need to maintain them. Depending on your User ID and security settings, you can edit certain enabled fields on each page. These pages are similar to the manual net creation procedure pages.

This section discusses how to:

1. Adjust manual net information.
2. Adjust settlement instructions.
3. Adjust payables voucher information.
4. Adjust receivables item information.

**See Also**

[Chapter 6, “Managing Bilateral Netting,” Creating Nets Manually , page 92](#)

**Common Elements Used in This Section**

<b>Gross Amount</b>	Displays the Gross amount, which must equal the netting amount plus balance amount plus deselected amount. However, you can only populate two of these three fields to equal the gross amount, not all three.
<b>Payables DeSelect</b>	Displays the payables amount subtracted from the gross amount.
<b>Receivables DeSelect</b>	Displays the receivables amount subtracted from the gross amount.

**Pages Used to Adjust Manually Netted Information**

Page Name	Object Name	Navigation	Usage
Adjust Netting - Manual Adjustment	NET_MANUAL_ADJUST	Cash Management, Settlements, Bi-Lateral Netting, Adjust Netting	Edit existing netting information.
Adjust Netting - Settlement Inst (instructions)	NET_MANUAL_ADJUST1	Click Settlement Instr on the Manual Adjustment page.	Edit existing settlement instruction information for a net.
Adjust Netting - Payables	NET_MAN_ADJUST_AP	Click the Settlement Instr link on the Payables page.	Edit existing payables information for a net.
Adjust Netting - Receivables	NET_MAN_ADJUST_AR	Click the Settlement Instr link on the Receivables page.	Edit existing receivables information for a net.

**Adjusting Manual Net Information**

Access the Adjust Netting - Manual Adjustment page.

Manual Adjustment	Settlement Instr	Payables	Receivables
<b>Primary Information</b>			
Netting Reference ID: 0000000000002	Netting Date: 08/08/2000	Settlement Date: 08/08/2000	
Status: Open	Process Type: Automatic	Closing Method: Partial	
Contract ID: TR_NET	Participant ID: TRNET	Currency: USD	
Netting Rule ID: ALL	Net all		
*Contact ID: 00018	<input type="button" value="Search"/> <input type="button" value="Print"/> Hamilton, Henry		
<b>Netting Results Payable</b>		<b>Netting Results Receivable</b>	
Total Payable Amount:	0.00	Total Receipt Amount:	7,855.70
Total Payable Transactions:	0	Total Receivable Transactions:	1
Netted Payable:	0.00	Netted Receivable:	0.00
Payable Balance:	0.00	Receivable Balance:	7,855.70
DeSelected Payable:	0.00	DeSelected Receivable:	0.00
<b>Audit Information</b>			
Updated By: VP1	11/12/2003 4:03:33PM	Approval User Id: VP1	11/12/2003 4:03:33PM

Adjust Netting - Manual Adjustment page

**Process Type** Indicates whether the net was processed by either *Automatic* or *Manual* method.

### Netting Results Payable

The system calculates the amounts based on the transaction entries on the Payables page.

**Netted Payable** Displays the netting amount total.

**Payable Balance** Displays the balance amount total.

**DeSelected Payable** Displays the deselected amount total.

### Netting Results Receivable

The system calculates the amounts displayed based on the transaction entries on the Receivables page.

**Netted Receivable** Displays the netting amount total.

**Receivable Balance** Displays the balance amount total.

**DeSelected Receivable** Displays the deselected amount total.

### See Also

[Chapter 6, “Managing Bilateral Netting,” Creating Nets Manually , page 92](#)

## Adjusting Settlement Instructions

Access the Adjust Netting - Settlement Instr page.

Settlement Instr	
<b>Netting Bank</b> SetID: <input type="text" value="SHARE"/> <input type="button" value="Search"/> Bank: <input type="text" value="NET01"/> <input type="button" value="Search"/> Account: <input type="text" value="NET1"/> <input type="button" value="Search"/> Account #: 0600-4500601 Netting Accounts <b>Disbursement Bank</b> *SetID: <input type="text" value="SHARE"/> <input type="button" value="Search"/> *Bank: <input type="text" value="TRBNK"/> <input type="button" value="Search"/> *Account: <input type="text" value="CHCK"/> <input type="button" value="Search"/> Account #: 7098454 Disbursement Banks <b>Vendor Bank</b> *SetID: <input type="text" value="SHARE"/> <input type="button" value="Search"/> *Remit Vendor: <input type="text" value="AUS0000001"/> <input type="button" value="Search"/> Computers Unlimited Location: <input type="text" value="MAIN"/> <input type="button" value="Search"/> *Seq Nbr: <input type="text" value="1"/> <input type="button" value="Search"/> Account #: 6634278 Vendor Banks <b>Payment Methods</b> Payment Method - Payable: <input type="text" value="System Check"/> <input type="button" value="Search"/> Payment Method - Receivable: <input type="text" value="Check (Check, EFT, etc.)"/> <input type="button" value="Search"/> *Deposit Unit: <input type="text" value="AUS01"/> <input type="button" value="Search"/> AUSTRALIA OPERATIONS	

Adjust Netting - Settlement Instr (instructions) page

### See Also

[Chapter 6, “Managing Bilateral Netting,” Entering Settlement Information for Netting Contracts, page 89](#)

## Adjust Payables Voucher Information

Access the Adjust Netting - Payables page.

Manual Adjustment | Settlement Instr | **Payables** | Receivables

**Manual Adjustment**

Netting Reference ID:	0000000000002	Netting Date:	08/08/2000	Netting Status:	Open
Netted Payable:	0.00	Netted Receivable:	0.00	USD	
Payable Balance:	0.00	<input type="button" value="Refresh"/>			
DeSelected Payable:	0.00				

**Payable Transactions**

*Unit	*Voucher ID	*Payments	Gross Amt	Netting Amount	Balance Amount	DeSelected Amount
		0	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000

Customize | Find | View All |

[Add Multiple Vouchers](#)

Adjust Netting - Payables page

**Note.** You can only add transaction items—you can't delete existing or added transactions.

## See Also

[Chapter 6, “Managing Bilateral Netting,” Setting Up the Payables Leg, page 95](#)

## Adjust Receivables Item Information

Access the Adjust Netting - Receivables page.

Manual Adjustment | Settlement Instr | Payables | **Receivables**

**Manual Adjustment**

Netting Reference ID:	0000000000002	Netting Date:	08/08/2000	Netting Status:	Open
Netted Payable:	0.00	Netted Receivable:	0.00	USD	
Receivable Balance:	7,855.70	<input type="button" value="Refresh"/>			
DeSelected Receivable:	0.00				

**Receivable Transactions**

*Unit	*Customer	*Item ID	Line	Item Balance	Netted Amount	Bal Amount	DeSel Amount
US001	1011	0000678450	0	7,855.70	0.00	7,855.70	0.00

Customize | Find | View All |

[Add Multiple Items](#)

Adjust Netting - Receivables page

**Note.** You can only add transaction items—you can't delete existing or added transactions.

## See Also

[Chapter 6, “Managing Bilateral Netting,” Setting Up the Receivables Leg , page 96](#)

---

# Processing Multicurrency Nets

This section gives an overview of the multicurrency netting functionality, and discusses how to process this net type.

## Multicurrency Netting Functionality

PeopleSoft netting includes functionality to automatically adjust netted non-base currency accounting entries to ensure that the netting bank entries are in balance. This functionality requires that you setup certain pages and currency default values.

Once you have established the necessary currency codes, no further input is required—the system automatically evaluates and adjusts the necessary netting accounting entries.

The amount adjustment functionality happens between in the Netting Close process (TR\_NET\_CLOSE), which the system calls from the Pay Cycle Selection process (AP\_PAYSELECT.). The Net Close process analyzes if voucher and item accounting entries meet certain criteria, for example, if netting currency is greater than or less than the base currency. If the entries match the criteria, the Net Close process adjusts them by updating the AR (PAYMENT\_ITEM) and AP (PAYMENT\_VCHR\_XREF, VOUCHER, VOUCHER\_LINE, DISTRIB\_LINE) information prior to AP and AR posting. As posting creates accounting entries, the netting adjustment occurs prior to posting to avoid the additional work of accounting entry adjustment.

Here is an example of the netting adjustment functionality when the net involves Japanese yen (JPY) and United States dollars (USD):

- Netting Base Amount = 10000 JPY.
- Netting Foreign Amount = 100 USD.
- Rate = 100 JPY/USD.
- Summarized receivables amount for netting = 100 USD (10001 JPY).
- Summarized payables amount for netting = 100 USD (9999 JPY).

Given the above, the system calculates that:

- The Netting Base Amount of 10000 JPY is less than the receivables amount of 10001 JPY, and subtracts 1 JPY from the receivables total.
- The Netting Base Amount of 10000 JPY is greater than the payables amount of 9999 JPY, and adds 1 JPY to the payables total.

## Prerequisites

If you are netting bank accounts that are defined with different currencies, you must ensure that:

- You have established an exchange rate between two different currency codes on the Market Rates page.

- You have established as many valid currencies as needed by the specific netting bank account on the Netting Accounts - Valid Currencies (BANK\_ACCT\_CURR\_SEC) page. For example, if you are netting between two accounts—one using JPY, one using USD—you must define both JPY and USD as valid currencies for both accounts.

## See Also

Chapter 2, “Defining Cash Management Processing Options,” Defining Market Rates, page 13

*PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Setting Up External, Internal, and Netting Accounts,” Defining Netting Accounts

## Processing Multicurrency Nets

To process multicurrency nets:

1. For the AP Voucher Entry confirm that:
  - You define the Curr (currency) field on the Invoice Information page with the convert into currency.
  - You define the Payment Currency field on the Invoice Information - Payments: Payment Options page with the convert into currency.
2. Approve the AP Voucher, but do not post it.
3. For the AR Item Entry confirm that:
  - You define the Control Currency field on the Group Control page with the convert into currency.
  - You define the Currency field on the Pending Item 1 page with the convert into currency.
4. Post the AR vouchers using the Group Control - Group Action page. (You can post AR vouchers as they are not evaluated by the Net Close process.)
5. Run the Receivable Update Request process.
6. Create a manual net using the Manual Netting pages, being sure to define the Netting Currency field with the convert into currency. When you complete creating the manual net, click Submit.
7. Approve the multicurrency net using the Administer Netting page.
8. Establish voucher payment selection criteria for the pay cycle using the Payment Selection Criteria page.
9. Process the pay cycle and create the payment using the Pay Cycle Manager page.
10. Post the voucher using the Payment Posting Request page.
11. Run the Receivables Update Request process again to close the receivables nets.
12. Review the resulting accounting entry and payment information on the following pages:
  - (AP) Voucher Accounting Entries
  - (AR) Group Control - Accounting Entries
  - Payment Control - Accounting Entries

---

**Note.** Remember that any AP vouchers posted before the netting close process *do not* encounter the rounding analysis of the netting adjustment process. Their associated accounting entries will not be adjusted.

---

## See Also

[Chapter 6, “Managing Bilateral Netting,” Administering Nets, page 104](#)

[Chapter 6, “Managing Bilateral Netting,” Creating Nets Manually , page 92](#)

[Chapter 6, “Managing Bilateral Netting,” Closing Nets, page 106](#)

*PeopleSoft Payables 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Entering and Processing Vouchers Online: General Voucher Entry Information,” Entering Invoice Information for Online Vouchers

*PeopleSoft Payables 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Running Voucher and Payment Posting”

*PeopleSoft Payables 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Reviewing Voucher, Payment, and Vendor Information,” Reviewing Voucher Information

*PeopleSoft Receivables 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Entering Pending Items”

*PeopleSoft Receivables 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Posting and Unposting Groups”

*PeopleSoft Receivables 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Entering Pending Items”

*PeopleSoft Receivables 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Maintaining and Reviewing Item Information,” Changing and Reviewing Item Information

---

## Administering Nets

This section discusses how to:

- Approve nets.
- Cancel nets.

## Pages Used to Administer Nets

Page Name	Object Name	Navigation	Usage
Approve Netting	NET_NETTING_ADMIN	Cash Management, Settlements,Bi-Lateral Netting, Approve Netting	Search for existing nets and approve, cancel, or re-open nets.
Cancel Netting	NET_NETTING_ADMIN	Cash Management, Settlements,Bi-Lateral Netting, Cancel Netting	Search for existing nets and cancel nets with an <i>Open</i> status.

## Approving Nets

Access the Approve Netting page.

**Approve Netting**

**Search Criteria**

Reference:	000000000002	Contract ID:		Status:		Search
From Date:		To Date:				

**Selected Nets**

Select	Reference	Status	Contract ID	Netting Date	Receivable	Payable	Netted Amount	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	000000000002		Open	TR_NET	08/08/2000	7,855.70	0.00	0.00

Customize | Find | View All | First  1 of 1  Last

**Buttons:** Cancel | Approve | Re-Open

Approve Netting page

**Search**

Specify search criteria and click the button to retrieve data on multiple nets. Your results appear in the Selected Nets grid.

**Status**

Select from *Approved*, *Cancelled*, *Closed*, or *Open*.

**Reference**

Click the link to access the bilateral netting pages, and modify transaction information.



Click to adjust the selected net.

**Select**

Select an item's check box, then approve or cancel net. The selected net(s) status changes to *Approved* or *Cancelled*. Once netting contracts are approved, they are "locked" and can't be edited. Select Re-Open to unlock approved netting contracts for modifications.

## Canceling Nets

Access the Cancel Netting page.

**Cancel Netting**

**Search Criteria**

Reference:	000000000002	<input type="button" value=""/>	Contract ID:	<input type="text"/>	<input type="button" value=""/>	Status:	<input type="button" value=""/>	<input type="button" value="Search"/>
From Date:	<input type="text"/>	<input type="button" value=""/>	To Date:	<input type="text"/>	<input type="button" value=""/>			

**Selected Nets**

Select	Reference	Status	Contract ID	Netting Date	Receivable	Payable	Netted Amount
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	000000000002	Open	TR_NET	08/08/2000	7,855.70	0.00	0.00

[Customize](#) | [Find](#) | [View All](#) | [First](#) [1 of 1](#) [Last](#)

Cancel Netting page

Page fields and functionality are similar to those discussed in Administering Nets—but here you can only cancel nets with an *Open* Status.

### See Also

[Chapter 6, “Managing Bilateral Netting,” Administering Nets, page 104](#)

## Closing Nets

Once you select (by manual or automatic methods) and approve nets, you close them in both PeopleSoft Payables and PeopleSoft Receivables.

You close payables nets by creating payment selection criteria and running Pay Cycle Manager. If there is any remaining payables net balance (balance is less than or greater than zero), you must create a new payment selection criteria and run Pay Cycle Manager again.

To close receivables nets, you must run the Request Receivables Update process, which updates the customer information with the invoice netting payment created in the netting process.

The Net Closing Process also contains the multicurrency net adjustment functionality. For nets involving multiple currencies this functionality evaluates if the payables and receivables accounting entries are in balance, given a defined currency conversion rate. The system then automatically adjusts them as necessary prior to payables and receivables posting.

### See Also

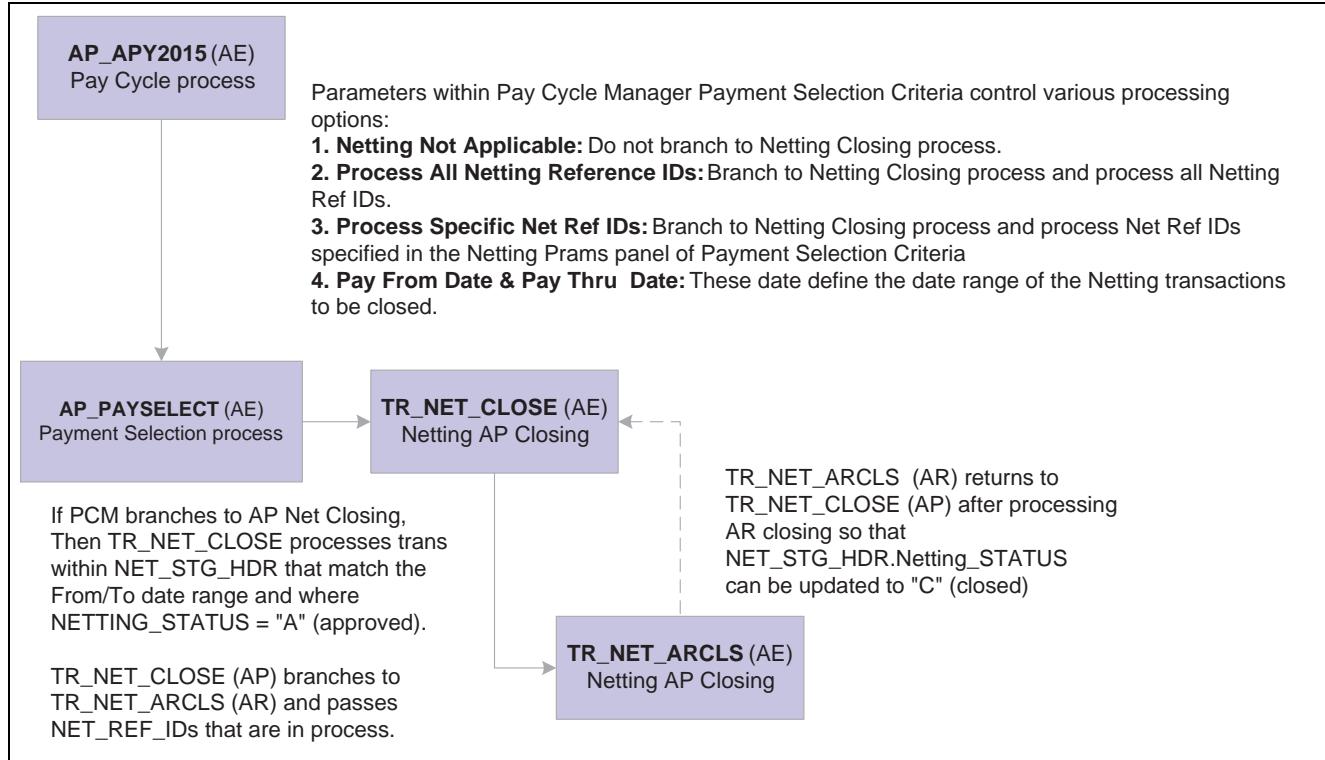
[Chapter 6, “Managing Bilateral Netting,” Multicurrency Netting Functionality, page 102](#)

*PeopleSoft Purchasing 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Running Document Tolerances”

*PeopleSoft Receivables 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Entering Payments,” Bilateral Netting

## Understanding the Net Closing Process in Pay Cycle Process

Here is a more detailed look at the Netting Closing Application Engine processes, (TR\_NET\_CLOSE) and (TR\_NET\_ARCLS), which launch from Pay Cycle Manager (AP\_APY2015). These processes close the netting population of the AR and AP transactions that are selected for netting. Closing refers to updating the transactions in the netting tables as well as updating transactions in the AP and AR tables. Inserts are done in certain situations. (For example, if an AP payment is greater than the AR balance, PeopleSoft will insert a new line in AP for the remaining balance not offset by the receivable amount.) This graphic illustrates the process:



Netting closing processes launched from Pay Cycle process

## Inquiring on Bilateral Nets

You can inquire on your bilateral netting contract and relationship information.

## Pages Used to Inquire on Bilateral Nets

Page Name	Object Name	Navigation	Usage
Review Netting Contracts	NET_SCHD_CNTRC	Cash Management, Settlements,Bi-Lateral Netting, Review Netting Contract	Search your netting data by netting contract.
Netting Inquiry	NET_INQUIRY_HDR	Cash Management, Settlements,Bi-Lateral Netting, Review Single Netting	Review information on a single netting relationship.
Administer Netting	NET_NETTING_ADMIN	Cash Management, Settlements,Bi-Lateral Netting, Review Multiple Netting	Review information on multiple netting contracts.

# CHAPTER 7

## Transferring Funds

This chapter provides an overview of the funds transfer process and discusses how to:

- Create funds transfer templates.
- Manage funds transfer template approval.
- Begin funds transfer requests.
- Create electronic fund transfer (EFT) requests.
- Create fee entries for EFT requests.
- Create bank account transfers.
- Create deals transfers.
- Review repetitive transfers.

---

### Understanding the Transfer Funds Process

PeopleSoft Cash Management defines and supports these two funds transfer methods:

- Bank account transfers

Bank account transfers are used by your organization to transfer money between banks that are on your organization's general ledger (from one of your organization's bank accounts to another bank account belonging to your organization). This could be a transfer between your internal bank accounts, between your external bank accounts, or between your internal and your external bank accounts.

PeopleSoft defines the following two categories of bank account transfers:

- External bank transfers are used by your organization to transfer money between banks that are on your organization's general ledger (from one of your organization's bank accounts to another bank account belonging to your organization).
- Internal bank transfers are transfers between business units using internal banks and internal bank accounts that you have created for your organization.

- EFTs

EFTs are used to transfer funds from your organization's bank to an external third party.

For bank account transfers and EFTs, you can send funds transfers from templates, as well as on an ad hoc basis. To minimize the amount of manual entry when sending these ad hoc funds transfers, you can complete recipient information from settlement instructions, such as when you are paying a vendor who provides occasional services.

PeopleSoft Cash Management also includes repetitive transfer and drawdown transfer functionality. Repetitive transfers and drawdown transfers are preapproved agreements to transfer monetary amounts on a periodic basis. (The Federal Reserve Fedwire transfer system supports four types of Fedwire transfers: repetitive, semi-repetitive, non-repetitive or freeform, and drawdown. PeopleSoft funds transfer functionality supports all four transfer types.) There is not a funds transfer method as described above for bank account transfers and EFTs. The relationship of the involved parties determines whether a repetitive or drawdown transfer is in the form of a bank account transfer or EFT.

PeopleSoft Cash Management supports the following transfer types:

- A repetitive transfer is used when a company makes a transfer between the same debit and credit parties frequently.

The parties involved may be your organization and your bank—or your organization, your bank, and a third party. The Originating Depository Financial Institution (ODFI) has a record of the debit and credit parties and receives electronic and telephonic instructions to make the transfer. The ODFI also assigns a unique identifier to each instruction template. The items communicated to the ODFI as part of the transfer consist of the unique identifier, the date of the transfer, and the dollar amount. Of these three items, only the date and dollar amount may be changed, which decreases the risk of misdirected funds.

- A semi-repetitive transfers is similar to a repetitive transfer.

The difference is that you can also modify the transfer description, in addition to the amount and date information.

- A non-repetitive or freeform transfer is used for ad-hoc transfers; you can edit all fields.
- A drawdown is a request sent by a company to an ODFI to initiate a wire transfer from its own account or another party's account at a Receiving Depository Financial Institution (RDFI).

For drawdown transfers, the RDFI is the payor of funds. The RDFI requires that it have authorization for payment from the account holder—meaning the party being debited must preauthorize the transfer.

Drawdown transfers are most frequently used as part of a company's cash concentration system. Organizations use cash concentration systems to consolidate many bank accounts (operated by individual areas in the organization) to a cash position in a single account.

Drawdown transfers are also a subset of repetitive transfers. You can set up a drawdown transfer to be a repetitive transfer.

You can set up preapproved repetitive transfers and drawdown transfers in the PeopleSoft Cash Management funds transfer pages, creating a template that stores the repetitive transfer agreement information. This information includes the unique identifier assigned by the bank that authorizes (or administrates) the transfer.

---

**Note.** As repetitive transfers and drawdown transfers are preapproved and preconfigured agreements, they cannot be initiated on an ad hoc basis.

---

## Funds Transfer Business Process

To process funds transfers, you create the transfer (either ad-hoc or using a template), select it for settlement, and route it for settlement approval. After it is approved, the system forwards the transfer to the electronic funds transfer manager function for processing. Use the dispatch settlements functionality to transmit the transfer to the appropriate bank and bank account.

For repetitive and drawdown transfers, only the repetitive transfer code (for drawdown transfers, this is the third-party authorization code), amount, and date are transmitted to the ODFI.

Here is a general overview of the steps in the funds transfer process:

1. Create all of the templates required by your organization.

Here are some possible combinations:

- Bank account transfer.
- Bank account transfer as a repetitive transfer.
- Bank account transfer as a drawdown transfer.
- Bank account transfer as a repetitive drawdown transfer.
- EFT.
- EFT as a repetitive transfer.
- EFT as a drawdown transfer.
- EFT as a repetitive drawdown transfer.

2. Approve new and modified templates.
3. Create a bank account transfer or EFT request.
4. On the bank account transfer or EFT request, select the appropriate template to create the specific transfer needed and provide any necessary transfer information to complete the transfer instructions.
5. Select and approve transfers for settlement using the Settlement Manager.
6. Dispatch settlements to the appropriate banking institution for payment.

The system processes the approved funds transfers and generates the appropriate accounting entries. Accounting entries for EFT transfers may be generated only if an accounting template has been specified on the EFT transfer request. Accounting events for bank transfers are automatic and do not need an accounting template.

## See Also

[Chapter 8, “Working with Settlements ,” page 135](#)

---

## Prerequisites

To process funds transfers:

- Configure banks.
- Configure bank branches.
- Configure bank accounts and account payment methods.

At this time, you can optionally:

- Define settlement instructions.
- Define bank account transfer templates.
- Define EFT request template instructions and field level security for templates.
- Define settlement approval options.

## See Also

*PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Setting Up External, Internal, and Netting Accounts,” Defining Account Settlement Information

*PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Setting Up Banks and Counterparties,” Defining Settlement Instructions for Counterparty Deals

*PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Setting Up Electronic Banking”

---

## Common Elements Used in This Chapter

**Payment Method** Indicate the method used to get the funds from the funding account. For example, select *ACH* if the funds are to be processed through an automated clearing house.

**Repetitive Transfer Code** A code for any repetitive funds transfer type, assigned by a bank (or financial institution) to automatically initialize the bank’s transfer process.

**Drawdown Transfer** If selected, it indicates the transfer is a repetitive drawdown transfer.

---

## Creating and Approving Funds Transfer Templates

To define transfer templates, use the Enter Transfer Templates component (TR\_WIRE\_TEMPLATES).

This section discusses how to:

1. Enter template origin information.
2. Specify template destination information.
3. Configure template EFT handling options.
4. Define template intermediary bank routings.
5. Enter template transfer addenda.
6. Add template internal notes.
7. Record template beneficiary address information.
8. Define template field security.

### Understanding the Funds Transfer Template Component

Your organization may benefit from setting up transactions in advance with parties with which you conduct regular, specific transactions. For example, using template transactions can streamline the process of distributing quarterly payouts to clients or monthly or annual payments to vendors.

You set up the template, specifying whether it is for bank account transfers or EFTs. You can then further specify if the template is a repetitive transfer or drawdown transfer. Page values established at the template level for repetitive and drawdown transfers cannot be changed by a user at the transfer request level. In addition, you can specify security at the field level for the template.

---

**Note.** Pages and fields in the funds transfer template morph and become available or unavailable for entry, depending on the selected transfer class.

---

To create a funds transfer template:

1. Select the Add a New Value tab on the Funds Transfer Templates search page.
2. Enter a SetID and Transfer Template ID, and specify a Transfer Class of *Bank Transfer* or *EFT Transfer*.
3. Complete the Origin, Destination, Beneficiary Address, and Template Field Security pages of the funds transfer template pages.

## Pages Used to Create and Approve Funds Transfer Templates

Page Name	Object Name	Navigation	Usage
Enter Transfer Templates - Origin	TR_WR_TEMPLATE_FR	Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, Enter Transfer Templates	Enter template origin information. Set up the template for withdrawing funds from an account to transfer those funds.
Enter Transfer Templates - Destination	WR_TEMPLATE_FR	Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, Enter Transfer Templates Select the Destination tab.	Specify template destination information. Set up templates to send wire transfers repeatedly to particular parties.
EFT Options	TR_EFT_OPT_SEC	Click EFT Options on the Enter Transfer Templates - Destination page.	Configure template EFT handling options.
Routings	TR_INTR_TBL_SEC	Click Routings on the Enter Transfer Templates - Destination page.	Define template intermediary bank routings. Set up multiple routing information for a funds transfer.
Enter Transfer Templates - Detailed Description	TR_WR_DESC_SEC	Click View Description on the Enter Transfer Templates - Destination page.	Enter any of your in-house notes for the funds transfer. This information is not transmitted to the recipient.
Enter Transfer Templates - Addenda	STL_ADDENDA2_SP	Click Addenda on the Enter Transfer Template - Destination page.	Enter addenda information. This information is transmitted to the recipient.
Enter Transfer Templates - Beneficiary Address	WR_TEMPLATE_ADR	Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, Enter Transfer Templates Select the Beneficiary Address tab.	Set up address information for the recipient of the funds transfer.
Enter Transfer Templates - Template Field Security	WR_TMPLT_FLDLST	Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, Enter Transfer Templates Select the Template Field Security tab.	Select the active fields in your template, choose whether to enable accounting or to allow settlement instructions.

## Entering Template Origin Information

Access the Enter Transfer Templates - Origin page.

Origin	Destination	Beneficiary Address	Template Field Security
SetID: SHARE	Transfer Template ID: BR1_FEE	Transfer Class: EFT Transfer	
*Description: Goldman Sachs Fee Payment		*Status: <input type="button" value="Active"/>	Template Expiration: <input type="button"/>
<b>From Bank Account</b>			
Bank Code:	USBANK <input type="button"/>	USA BANK	121042882
Bank Account:	CHK <input type="button"/>	USBANK Treasury Acct	0741-256206
Amount:	<input type="text"/>	Currency: <input type="button" value="USD"/>	Payment Method: <input type="button" value="EFT"/>
Repetitive Transfer Code:	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Repetitive Transfer	<input type="checkbox"/> Drawdown Transfer
Accounting Template:	TR_WIRES <input type="button"/>		
<b>Template Approval Status</b>			
Approval Status	Date	By	
Pending			

Enter Transfer Templates - Origin page

All available fields on this page are required. They contain relevant information about the account from which you are transferring funds. Available fields depend on the selected transfer class.

**Status** Select *Active* or *Inactive*. If you mark a template *Inactive*, it is not available for use (it does not appear in the funds transfer pages).

**Template Expiration** Enter a date that the repetitive transfer template expires.

If you select an expired template for use—meaning, if the template status is set to *Active* and the system date is past the date entered in this field—the system displays a warning message that you have selected an outdated template.

**Payment Method** Available payment methods are determined by the values that you define in the Bank Code and Bank Account fields.

**Repetitive Transfer Code** Enter the repetitive transfer code that the bank assigned to this transfer. This field is required because the code is necessary to initiate the transfer process with the bank.

**Repetitive Transfer** Select if this template is for a repetitive transfer.

**Drawdown Transfer** Select if this template is for a drawdown transfer.

**Accounting Template** For transfers of an *EFT Transfer* transfer class, specify the accounting template from which to generate accounting entries.

**Approval Status** Displays *Pending* as the value when you first create a transfer. The status changes as activity occurs later in the workflow—for example, when a supervisor approves the entered funds.

## Specifying Template Destination Information

Access the Enter Transfer Templates - Destination page.

Origin	Destination	Beneficiary Address	Template Field Security
SetID: SHARE	Transfer Template ID: BR1_FEE	Transfer Class: EFT Transfer	
<b>To Bank Account</b>			
Name 1:	GoldMan Sachs		<input type="button" value="Get Settlement Instructions"/>
Name 2:	<input type="text"/>		
Bank Name:	Wells Fargo		
Branch Name:	New York		Country: <input type="button" value="USA"/> United States
Bank ID Qualifier:	001	<input type="button" value="Search"/>	United States Bank
Bank ID:	210403905		Acct Type: <input type="button" value="Check Acct"/>
Account #:	123212200		
DFI Qualifier:	<input type="button" value="Search"/>	DFI ID: <input type="text"/>	
IBAN Digit:	<input type="button" value="Search"/>	<input type="button" value="View IBAN"/>	
<a href="#">EFT Options</a> <a href="#">Routings</a> <a href="#">Addenda</a>			

Enter Transfer Templates - Destination page

For Bank Transfer templates, only the Bank Code and Bank Account fields are available for entry.

Complete all applicable and available fields for EFT Transfer transfer classes.

**Get Settlement Instructions** Click to select settlement instructions and automatically populate fields. All page fields are overwritten with the settlement instruction information, including fields on the Beneficiary Address, EFT Options, Routings, and Detailed Description pages. Also, if a field is blank in the settlement instruction, the corresponding field on this page is also blank.

**Name 1 and Name 2** Enter the recipient's name and other significant identifying information, for example, a company name, a DBA (doing business as), or joint payees.

**Country** Select the destination country code, which also determines the selection of available Bank ID Qual (bank ID qualifier) values. Then specify a qualifier that determines which edit algorithm the system uses to check the bank ID number sequence.

**Bank ID** Enter the routing number of your recipient's financial institution.

**Branch ID** Enter the recipient's branch number.

**Acct Type (account type)** Select the destination account type:

- *Bond*
- *Bus Acct* (business account)
- *Check Acct*(checking account)
- *Dem Dep* (demand deposit)

- *Lf Ins-Net* (life insurance)
- *Mutual* (mutual fund)
- *Ret It-DDA* (returned item, demand deposit account)
- *Ret It-Sav* (returned item, savings account)
- *S&B Acct* (stocks and bonds account)
- *Stock*
- *Time Dep* (time deposit)
- *Trust Fund*

**Account #** (account number)

Enter the account number that you are funding with this transaction.

**Check Digit**



This field is conditional and depends on the country that you selected.

Click the View Description button to add internal notes about the funds transfer. These notes are not transmitted to the recipient.

**IBAN Digit** (international bank account number)

Create an IBAN for this template to facilitate automated processing of cross-border transactions.

Enter the check digit and click View IBAN. If the DFI qualifier for the specified country is IBAN-enabled, and the system successfully validates check digit, the IBAN for this account appears.

**DFI Qualifier** (depository financial institution qualifier)

Select to identify the bank and enter the associated DFI ID (depository financial institution ID), if required. If you use intermediary routings, this bank represents the final bank into which funds are transferred.

The DFI qualifier indicates what format—how many characters and numerics—are in the bank's DFI ID. Note that each type has a specific number of digits that you can enter. Values are:

*Transit Number:* Exactly 9 numeric characters, plus check digit calculation.

*Swift ID:* 8 or 11 characters; positions 5 and 6 must be a valid 2-character country code.

*CHIPS Participant ID* (Clearinghouse Interbank Payments System participant ID): 3 or 4 numeric characters.

*CHIPS Universal ID* (Clearinghouse Interbank Payments System universal ID): 6 numeric characters.

*Canadian Bank Branch/Institute:* No validation.

*Mutually Defined:* No validation.

## See Also

[Chapter 7, “Transferring Funds .” Specifying Destination Information, page 125](#)

*PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Setting Up External, Internal, and Netting Accounts,” IBAN Functionality

## Configuring Template EFT Handling Options

Access the EFT Options page.

Values specified at the template level cannot be overwritten at the request level.

See *PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Setting Up Banks and Counterparties,” Defining Beneficiary Bank EFT Options.

## Defining Template Intermediary Bank Routings

Access the Routings page.

Values specified at the template level can not be overwritten at the request level.

**Seq(sequence)** Enter a sequence number for the routing row. This sequence number determines in which order the system routes the message.

**Routing** Select from *Bank* or *DFI*.

## Entering Template Transfer Addenda

Access the Enter Transfer Templates - Addenda page.

Values specified at the template level cannot be overwritten at the request level.

For funds transfers, direct debits, and treasury wires, this page consists of four 35-character lines. For automated clearinghouse transactions, this page is a free-form, 80-character field.

## Adding Template Internal Notes

Access the Enter Transfer Templates - Detailed Description page.

Values specified at the template level can not be overwritten at the request level.

Information recorded in the Descr (description) field is not transmitted with the funds transfer.

## Recording Template Beneficiary Address Information

Access the Enter Transfer Templates - Beneficiary Address page.

## Defining Template Field Security

Access the Enter Transfer Templates - Template Field Security page.

Origin	Destination	Beneficiary Address	Template Field Security																																												
<b>SetID:</b> SHARE <b>Transfer Template ID:</b> TR_WIRE_ACH <b>Transfer Class:</b> EFT Transfer																																															
<b>Template Security Options</b> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> <div style="flex: 1;"> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Disable All Template Fields</b>  <input type="radio"/> <b>Selectively Enable Fields</b>  <input type="radio"/> <b>Enable All Template Fields</b> </div> <div style="flex: 1;"> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>Enable Accounting</b>  <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Allow Settlement Instructions</b> </div> </div>																																															
<b>Field Security Options</b> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between; font-size: small;"> <span>Customize   Find   View All  </span> <span>First</span> <span>1-10 of 68</span> <span>Last</span> </div> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th>Select</th> <th>Label Text</th> <th>Field Name</th> <th>Page Name</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td>Accounting Template</td><td>ACCTG_TMPL_ID</td><td>TR_WR_TEMPLATE_FR</td></tr> <tr><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td>ACH Description</td><td>ACH_DESCR</td><td>STL_ADDENDA_SP</td></tr> <tr><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td>Line 1</td><td>ADDENDA_REF1</td><td>STL_ADDENDA2_SP</td></tr> <tr><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td>Line 2</td><td>ADDENDA_REF2</td><td>STL_ADDENDA2_SP</td></tr> <tr><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td>Line 3</td><td>ADDENDA_REF3</td><td>STL_ADDENDA2_SP</td></tr> <tr><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td>Line 4</td><td>ADDENDA_REF4</td><td>STL_ADDENDA2_SP</td></tr> <tr><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td>Address Field 1</td><td>ADDR_FIELD1</td><td>EO_ADDRESS_SBP</td></tr> <tr><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td></td><td>ADDR_FIELD2</td><td>EO_ADDRESS_SBP</td></tr> <tr><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td></td><td>ADDR_FIELD3</td><td>EO_ADDRESS_SBP</td></tr> <tr><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td>Address 1</td><td>ADDRESS1</td><td>EO_ADDRESS_SBP</td></tr> </tbody> </table>				Select	Label Text	Field Name	Page Name	<input type="checkbox"/>	Accounting Template	ACCTG_TMPL_ID	TR_WR_TEMPLATE_FR	<input type="checkbox"/>	ACH Description	ACH_DESCR	STL_ADDENDA_SP	<input type="checkbox"/>	Line 1	ADDENDA_REF1	STL_ADDENDA2_SP	<input type="checkbox"/>	Line 2	ADDENDA_REF2	STL_ADDENDA2_SP	<input type="checkbox"/>	Line 3	ADDENDA_REF3	STL_ADDENDA2_SP	<input type="checkbox"/>	Line 4	ADDENDA_REF4	STL_ADDENDA2_SP	<input type="checkbox"/>	Address Field 1	ADDR_FIELD1	EO_ADDRESS_SBP	<input type="checkbox"/>		ADDR_FIELD2	EO_ADDRESS_SBP	<input type="checkbox"/>		ADDR_FIELD3	EO_ADDRESS_SBP	<input type="checkbox"/>	Address 1	ADDRESS1	EO_ADDRESS_SBP
Select	Label Text	Field Name	Page Name																																												
<input type="checkbox"/>	Accounting Template	ACCTG_TMPL_ID	TR_WR_TEMPLATE_FR																																												
<input type="checkbox"/>	ACH Description	ACH_DESCR	STL_ADDENDA_SP																																												
<input type="checkbox"/>	Line 1	ADDENDA_REF1	STL_ADDENDA2_SP																																												
<input type="checkbox"/>	Line 2	ADDENDA_REF2	STL_ADDENDA2_SP																																												
<input type="checkbox"/>	Line 3	ADDENDA_REF3	STL_ADDENDA2_SP																																												
<input type="checkbox"/>	Line 4	ADDENDA_REF4	STL_ADDENDA2_SP																																												
<input type="checkbox"/>	Address Field 1	ADDR_FIELD1	EO_ADDRESS_SBP																																												
<input type="checkbox"/>		ADDR_FIELD2	EO_ADDRESS_SBP																																												
<input type="checkbox"/>		ADDR_FIELD3	EO_ADDRESS_SBP																																												
<input type="checkbox"/>	Address 1	ADDRESS1	EO_ADDRESS_SBP																																												

Enter Transfer Templates - Template Field Security page

### Template Security Options

**Disable All Template Fields** If selected, clears all check boxes in the Field Security Options grid.

**Selectively Enable Fields** If selected, more than one field security option is selected.

**Enable All Template Fields** If selected, all field security options are selected.

**Enable Accounting** Select to activate accounting from a template.

**Allow Settlement Instructions** Select to leverage the EFT request into settlement instruction data.

## Managing Funds Transfer Template Approval

This section discusses how to approve funds transfer template changes.

## Page Used to Manage Funds Transfer Template Approval

Page Name	Object Name	Navigation	Usage
Approve Transfer Templates	TR_WR_TMPLT_APPR	Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, Approve Transfer Templates	Approve or deny funds transfer template changes.

### Approving Transfer Template Changes

Access the Approve Transfer Templates page.

Template Approval										
Select	SetID	Template ID	Transfer Class	Repetitive Transfer	Description	Amount	Currency	Approval Status	Date of Approval	Approved By
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	SHARE	BR1_FEE	EFT Transfer	N	Goldman Sachs Fee Payment		USD	Pending		
<input type="checkbox"/>	SHARE	OUTGOING	EFT Transfer	N	Out going wire template			Pending		

Approve Transfer Templates page

Once transfer templates are created, or if existing templates are modified, you must approve templates prior to using them. You can search for a specific template with a particular approval status and select to approve or deny items with your specified values.

To approve or deny transfer templates:

1. Enter your search criteria and click Search.
2. Click the template link in the Template ID column to view template information prior to approval or denial.
3. Select templates for approval or denial and click either Approve or Deny.

## Beginning Transfer Funds Requests

This section discusses how to begin a transfer request.

You can create EFT, bank, and deals transfers from various locations in PeopleSoft Cash Management. The Transfer Funds page acts as the first page of a multistep “wizard.” Select options to create a particular funds transfer type, and the system then routes you to the correct pages to complete the transfer.

## See Also

[Chapter 7, “Transferring Funds ,” Creating EFT Requests, page 122](#)

[Chapter 7, “Transferring Funds ,” Creating Bank Account Transfers, page 128](#)

[Chapter 7, “Transferring Funds ,” Creating Deals Transfers, page 133](#)

## Page Used to Begin a Transfer Funds Request

Page Name	Object Name	Navigation	Usage
Transfer Funds	TR_TRANSFER_PAGE	Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, Transfer Funds	Select a funds transfer type. Begin the setup of an funds transfer request for an EFT, banks, or deals request.

## Beginning a Transfer Funds Request

Access the Transfer Funds page.

Transfer Funds

**Transfer Type**

EFT Transfer  Bank Transfer  Deal Entry

**Transfer Options**

Business Unit:

Template:    Allow Template Override

Amount:  Currency Code:

Transfer Funds page

Available fields on this page change depending on the transfer type that you select.

**EFT Request Entry**  
(electronic funds transfer payment entry)

Transfer money to a third party. Select Template to prepopulate the EFT Request Entry pages.

**Bank Transfer**

Move funds between accounts that you own. Select *External* or *Internal* in the Transfer Type field.

**Deal Entry**

Transfer funds using a deal (for example, an intercompany loan).

**See Also**

[Chapter 7, “Transferring Funds ,” Creating Bank Account Transfers, page 128](#)

[Chapter 7, “Transferring Funds ,” Creating Deals Transfers, page 133](#)

[Chapter 7, “Transferring Funds ,” Creating and Approving Funds Transfer Templates, page 112](#)

[Chapter 7, “Transferring Funds ,” Defining Template Field Security , page 118](#)

---

## Creating EFT Requests

This section discusses how to:

- Enter transfer origin information.
- Specify destination information.
- (Optional) Configure EFT handling options.
- (Optional) Define intermediary bank routings.
- (Optional) Enter transfer addenda.
- (Optional) Add internal notes.
- Record beneficiary address information.

You can use the pages in this section to create an EFT request, whether your request is for a regular EFT request, or an EFT request involving repetitive transfer or drawdown transfer information.

**See Also**

[Chapter 7, “Transferring Funds ,” Creating Bank Account Transfers, page 128](#)

[Chapter 7, “Transferring Funds ,” Creating Deals Transfers, page 133](#)

## Pages Used to Create an EFT Request

Page Name	Object Name	Navigation	Usage
EFT Request - Origin	TR_WIRE_PNL	Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, EFT Request, Origin	Enter transfer origin information. Capture data on the account from which funds will be furnished for the transfer
EFT Request - Destination	TR_WIRE_TO_PNL	Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, EFT Request, Destination	Specify destination information by entering recipient information for a funds transfer.
EFT Options	TR_EFT_OPT_SEC	Click EFT Options on the EFT Request - Destination page.	Configure EFT Handling options.
Routings	TR_INTR_TBL_SEC	Click Routings on the EFT Request - Destination page.	Set up multiple routing information for a funds transfer.
EFT Request - Detailed Description	TR_WR_DESC_SEC	Click View Description on the EFT Request - Destination page.	Enter any of your in-house notes for the funds transfer. This information is not transmitted to the recipient.
EFT Request - Addenda	STL_ADDENDA2_SP	Click Addenda on the EFT Request - Destination page.	Enter addenda information. The system transmits this information to the recipient.
EFT Request - Beneficiary Address	TR_WIRE_ADDRESS	Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, EFT Request, Beneficiary Address	Capture the address and telephone information for the recipient of your funds transfers.

## Entering Transfer Origin Information

Access the EFT Request - Origin page.

Origin	Destination	Beneficiary Address
Unit: US001	EFT Request ID: TRW000000004	
<b>EFT Request Information</b>		
*Description: EFT transfer	Fed Wire ID:	Fees
Template ID: <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Search"/>	Template Expiration:	
<b>From Bank Account</b>		
Bank Code: USBNK <input type="button" value="Search"/>	Bank ID: 121042882	
Bank Account: CHCK <input type="button" value="Search"/>	Account #: 0741-256458	
Amount: 110000.00	Currency: USD <input type="button" value="Search"/>	
Payment Method: Electronic Funds Transfer	*Business Date: 08/02/2000 <input type="button" value="Search"/>	
Repetitive Transfer Code:	<input type="checkbox"/> Drawdown Transfer	
Acctg Template: <input type="text"/>		
<b>Transaction Information</b>		
Entered By SAMPLE	Date Time 08/02/2000 1:47:21PM	EFT Request Status Unapproved

EFT Request - Origin page

**Template ID**

Select the template, if you are executing the EFT requests from a template.

**Fed Wire ID (federal wire ID)**

For EFT requests associated with federal fund transfers, the Federal Reserve agency assigns a Federal Wire ID code after receiving the request. Enter the code in this field for your reference. This field is used only as reference in PeopleSoft Cash Management; it is not necessary for the accounting process.

**Note.** The Federal Wire ID code is the only reference number that the Federal Reserve recognizes when handling issues or questions about the transfer.

**Fees**

Click to create fees for this EFT request.

See [Chapter 7, “Transferring Funds,” Creating Fee Entries for EFT Requests, page 128.](#)

**Payment Method**

Select an available payment method (methods are determined by the values that you defined in the Bank Code and Bank Account fields).

Values are: *Automated Clearing House, Direct Debit, Electronic Funds Transfer, or Treasury Wire.*

You cannot select a payment method for any type of repetitive transfer.

**Business Date**

Enter the business date on which the funds transfer is to occur. The date that you select carries over to the next business day, depending on:

- Holiday lists associated with the currency of the nation funding the transaction.
- Business day conventions established at your organization’s Treasury Management implementation.

**Acct Template** (accounting template) Select an accounting template if accounting is to be run for the transfer. Leave this field blank if the transfer is already accounted for in another PeopleSoft application (for example, PeopleSoft Payables).

**Note.** The Acct Template field is unavailable when the selected theAccount # field is not enabled for cash clearing.

## Transaction Information

### EFT Request Status

Displays a value of *Unapproved*. This value changes as activity occurs later in the workflow—for example, when a supervisor approves the entered funds.

### See Also

*PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Setting Up External, Internal, and Netting Accounts,” Defining External Account Information

## Specifying Destination Information

Access the EFT Request - Destination page.

EFT Request - Destination page

### Get Settlement Instructions

Click to select settlement instructions and automatically populate fields. All fields are overwritten with the settlement instruction information, including fields on the Beneficiary Address, EFT Options, Routings, and Detailed Description pages. Also, if a field is blank in the settlement instruction, the corresponding field on this page is also blank.

### Name 1 and Name 2

Enter the recipient's name and other significant identifying information (for example, a company name, a DBA, or joint payees).

<b>Country</b>	Select the destination country code, which also determines the selection of available values in the Bank ID Qual (bank ID qualifier) values. Then specify a qualifier that determines which edit algorithm the system should use to check the bank ID number sequence.
<b>Bank ID</b>	Enter the routing number of your recipient's financial institution.
<b>Branch ID</b>	Enter the recipient's branch number.
<b>Acct Type</b> (account type)	Select the destination account type: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <i>Bond</i></li><li>• <i>Bus Acct</i> (business account)</li><li>• <i>Check Acct</i> (checking account)</li><li>• <i>Dem Dep</i> (demand deposit)</li><li>• <i>Lf Ins-Net</i> (life insurance)</li><li>• <i>Mutual</i> (mutual fund)</li><li>• <i>Ret It-DDA</i> (returned item, demand deposit account)</li><li>• <i>Ret It-Sav</i> (returned item, savings account)</li><li>• <i>S&amp;B Acct</i> (stocks and bonds account)</li><li>• <i>Stock</i></li><li>• <i>Time Dep</i> (time deposit)</li><li>• <i>Trust Fund</i></li></ul>
<b>Account #</b> (account number)	Enter the account number that you are funding with this transaction.
<b>Check Digit</b>	This field is conditional and dependent on the selected country.
	Click the View Description button to add internal notes about the funds transfer. These notes are not transmitted to the recipient.
<b>DFI Qualifier</b> (depository financial institution qualifier)	Select to identify the bank and enter the associated DFI ID (depository financial institution ID), if required. If you use intermediary routings, this bank represents the final bank into which funds are transferred.  The DFI qualifier indicates what format—how many characters and numerics—are in the bank's DFI ID. Note that each type has a specific number of digits that you can enter. Values are:  <i>Transit Number</i> : Exactly 9 numeric characters, plus check digit calculation. <i>Swift ID</i> : 8 or 11 characters; positions 5 and 6 must be a valid 2-character country code. <i>CHIPS Participant ID</i> (Clearinghouse Interbank Payments System participant ID): 3 or 4 numeric characters. <i>CHIPS Universal ID</i> (Clearinghouse Interbank Payments System universal ID): 6 numeric characters. <i>Canadian Bank Branch/Institute</i> : No validation.

*Mutually Defined:* No validation.

**IBAN Digit** (international bank account number digit)

Define the account's IBAN for transmittal with other transfer information. Enter the check digit and click View IBAN. If the DFI qualifier for the specified country is IBAN enabled, and the system successfully validates check digit, the IBAN for this account appears.

## See Also

[Chapter 7, “Transferring Funds .” Specifying Destination Information, page 125](#)

*PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Setting Up External, Internal, and Netting Accounts,” IBAN Functionality

*PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Setting Up External, Internal, and Netting Accounts,” Defining External Accounts Information

## Configuring EFT Handling Options

Set up EFT options for a bank.

See *PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Setting Up External, Internal, and Netting Accounts,” Defining EFT Options for Payment Methods.

## Defining Intermediary Bank Routings

Define intermediary bank routings.

See [Chapter 7, “Transferring Funds ,” Configuring Template EFT Handling Options, page 118](#).

## Entering Transfer Addenda

Access the Addenda page.

For funds transfers, direct debits, and treasury wires, this page consists of four 35-character lines. For automated clearinghouse transactions, this page is a free-form, 80-character field.

## Adding Internal Notes

Access the Detailed Description page.

**Descr** (description) Enter a description for this transfer. Information recorded in this field is not transmitted with the funds transfer.

## Recording Beneficiary Address Information

Access the EFT Request - Beneficiary Address page.

Completing all applicable fields provides you with reference information on which to follow up and on which to confirm receipt of funds.

---

## Creating Fee Entries for EFT Requests

This section discusses how to:

- Define fee codes for EFT requests.
- Create fee entries using EFT request fee codes.

### Pages Used to Create Fee Entries for EFT Requests

Page Name	Object Name	Navigation	Usage
Fee Code	FA_FEE_CD_PNL	Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Treasury, Fee Codes	Define fee codes for EFT requests.
Fee Entry	FEE_GENERATOR_PNL	Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, Fee Entry	Create fee entries for EFT requests using previously defined fee codes.

### Defining Fee Codes for EFT Requests

Define fee codes.

See [Chapter 4, “Managing Fees and Account Analysis,” Defining Fee Codes, page 26.](#)

### Creating Fee Entries Using EFT Requests Fee Codes

Define fee entries.

See [Chapter 4, “Managing Fees and Account Analysis,” Creating Fee Entries, page 37.](#)

---

## Creating Bank Account Transfers

This section provides an overview of bank account transfers and discusses how to:

1. Process bank account transfers.
2. (Optional) View associated bank transfer ChartFields.
3. (Optional) View accounting events.
4. Process bank transfers using electronic settlements.

### Understanding Bank Account Transfers

Transferring funds between bank accounts is a common requirement for cash managers. Typical tasks that require fund transfers are:

- Adjusting daily cash balances.
- Making a trade payment or receipt on behalf of a business unit.

- Funding the internal accounts of other business units.

---

**Note.** Only corporate treasury-designated banks can initiate fund transfers. However, this rule does not apply when the transfer is between two bank accounts that belong to the same business unit.

---

The system schedules accounting events and updates bank balances. Bank transfer transactions are also available to the settlements module for all settlement-related processes and eventual payment. You can create templates for transfers that occur frequently; you can then recall the template and enter the amount and the date.

These transfer types are supported by the system:

- Internal bank transfers: from one internal account to another internal account.
- External bank transfers: from one external account to another external account.

### See Also

*PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Setting Up External, Internal, and Netting Accounts,” Defining Internal Account Information

## Prerequisites

You must set up internal bank accounts.

To set up internal bank accounts:

1. Define a bank with the Type set to *Internal* on the Bank Information page.
2. Create an internal bank account between two internal bank types.

### See Also

*PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Setting Up External, Internal, and Netting Accounts,” Defining Internal Account Information

## Pages Used to Create Bank Account Transfers

Page Name	Object Name	Navigation	Usage
Transfer Funds	TR_TRANSFER_PAGE	Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, Transfer Funds	Begin the setup of a bank transfer.
Bank Account Transfer	BAX_TRANSFER_PNL	Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, Bank Account Transfer	Initiate bank transfers for internal or external bank transfers.
Bank Transfer Chartfields	BAX_CF_ENTRY	Click Chartfields on the Bank Account Transfer page.	View associated bank transfer ChartFields.
Accounting Events	TRA_EVENT_CAL	Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Accounting Events	View summary accounting event information generated from deals, facility fees, and bank transfers.
Dispatch Settlements	STL_EFT_MANAGER	Cash Management, Settlements, Settlement Manager	Process bank transfers using electronic settlements.

## Processing Bank Account Transfers

Access the Bank Account Transfer page.

**Bank Account Transfer**

**Bank Transfer Information**

Business Unit:	US001	Transfer ID:	NEXT
*Description:	BT Repetitive Draw Down		*Trans Date: 08/15/2003
<input type="checkbox"/> Chartfields			

**Template Information**

Transfer Template ID:	BNKTR-REPDRW	<input type="button" value=""/>	Template Expiration: 06/07/2004
Repetitive Transfer Code: BNKTR-REPDRW		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Drawdown Transfer	

**Transfer From Account**

*Bank Code:	USBNK		
Bank Account:	CHCK	0741-256458	Payment Method: TRW
*Amount:	<input type="text"/>		Currency: USD US Dollar

**Transfer To Account**

Bank Code:	TRBNK		
Bank Account:	CHK4	0005-802902	Instructions: TRBK2

Bank Account Transfer page

To create internal bank account transfers:

1. Select the Add a New Value tab on the Bank Account Transfer search page.
2. Enter values in the Business Unit and Transfer ID fields, and specify a value of *Internal Transfer* in the Transfer Type field.
3. Click Add.
4. Enter a description.

5. Create internal bank account transfers from a template or on an ad hoc basis:

- Click Use Template to select a defined template on which to base a transfer. This displays a list of templates from which you can select according to the business unit transfer ID and description. The system populates all of the fields except Tran Date (transaction date) and Amount. To create the transfer, complete those fields.
- Create an ad hoc internal bank account transfer by completing fields only in the Transfer From Account and Transfer To Account regions.

If you anticipate that the ad hoc transfer will recur frequently, select the Can be used as Template check box to save it as a template.

- Click the Instructions button to review the settlement instructions. The settlement instructions define how the payment or transfer is made—the system uses the deposit instructions from the bank account that is receiving funds (the Transfer To Account bank).

6. Save the transfer.

If you are creating external bank account transfers, you can specify a transfer template that may also include drawdown wire or repetitive wire information.

To create external bank account transfers:

1. Select the Add a New Value tab on the Bank Account Transfer search page.
2. Enter values in the Business Unit and Transfer ID fields, and specify a value of *External Transfer* in the Transfer Type field.
3. Click Add.
4. Enter a description.
5. Create external bank account transfers from a template or on an ad hoc basis:

- Select a transfer template ID to automatically populate the external bank account transfer with information. If you create an external bank account transfer from a template, you can also click the Chartfields link to edit the bank transfer ChartFields.
- Leave the Transfer Template ID field blank to create an ad hoc bank account transfer. Complete the remaining fields on the page. If you create an ad hoc external bank account transfer, you cannot modify the bank transfer ChartFields.
- Click the Instructions button to review the settlement instructions. The settlement instructions define how the payment or transfer is made—the system uses the deposit instructions from the bank account that is receiving funds (the Transfer To Account bank).

6. Save the transfer.

## Transfer From Account

Describe the bank account that is serving as the fund source.

- For an external bank, select the bank and the bank account.
- For an internal bank, select the bank, and then specify the account customer and associated bank account. (The customer represents the business unit that is serving as the fund source.) Enter the monetary amount to transfer.

## Transfer to Account

Indicate the bank account or internal account that is receiving the funds. Select a bank that is an appropriate match for the transfer from account only.

- If the transfer from account bank is an external bank, then the transfer to account bank must also be external. For an external bank, select the bank and bank account.
- For an internal bank, select the bank and then specify the customer and the associated bank account. (The customer represents the business unit that is receiving funds.)

For example, suppose that you want to move business unit UBU03's balance from its account with TBU02 to TBU01's account with TBU02. This table lists the set up:

Group box	Bank	Customer
Transfer From Account	TBU02	OBU03
Transfer To Account	TBU02	TBU01

---

**Note.** External transfers must first be selected and approved before being processed through the Electronic Settlements page.

For internal transfers, some restrictions are enforced:

- The customer specified as the Transfer From Account cannot be the same as the bank specified as the Transfer To Account for the same transaction.
- Similarly, the bank specified as the Transfer From Account cannot be the same as the customer specified as the Transfer To Account for the same transaction.

After you save the transfer, the system updates cash flows and generates an accounting event to create journal entries for this transaction.

---

**Note.** When internal accounts are established between two business units, you can specify a default internal account. If more than one account exists between two business units with the same currency, the default account is the one that is processed in bank transfer.

### See Also

[Chapter 9, “Managing Treasury Accounting ,” Reviewing Accounting Information, page 172](#)

[Chapter 8, “Working with Settlements ,” Cash Management Payment Dispatch Process, page 136](#)

## Viewing Associated Bank Transfer ChartFields

Access the Bank Transfer Chartfields page.

### See Also

[PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 8.8 PeopleBook, “Setting Up External, Internal, and Netting Accounts,” Defining Bank Account Draft ChartFields](#)

## Viewing Accounting Events

Access the Accounting Events page.

Enter *Bank Transfers* in the Source Code field to view the scheduled accounting event.

See [Chapter 9, “Managing Treasury Accounting ,” Reviewing Accounting Information, page 172.](#)

## Processing Bank Transfers Using Electronic Settlements

Access the Dispatch Settlements page.

Process bank transfers using electronic settlements.

See [Chapter 8, “Working with Settlements ,” Dispatching Settlements, page 145.](#)

---

## Creating Deals Transfers

Create funds transfers for deals.

See *PeopleSoft Deal Management 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Capturing Deals and Trade Tickets”.

---

## Reviewing Repetitive Transfers

This section discusses how to review repetitive transfers.

### Page Used to Review Repetitive Transfers

Page Name	Object Name	Navigation	Usage
Review Repetitive Transfers	TR_REPTVE_TRNF_PG	Cash Management, Repetitive Transfers, Review Repetitive Templates	Search for and maintain your organization’s repetitive transfers.

## Reviewing Repetitive Transfers

Access the Review Repetitive Transfers page.

To maintain your repetitive transfers:

1. Enter your search criteria, and click the Search button.
2. From the returned results, click a Template ID to access the specific transfer template’s information.
3. If you edit any information on the transfer template:
  - Click OK to save your changes and return to the Review Repetitive Transfers page.
  - Click Cancel to discard your changes without saving, and return to the Review Repetitive Transfers page.
  - Click Apply to save your changes without returning to the Review Repetitive Transfers page.



# CHAPTER 8

## Working with Settlements

This chapter provides an overview of the settlements payment process, lists prerequisites and common elements, and discusses how to:

- Select settlements for outbound submission.
- Manually approve settlements.
- Dispatch settlements.
- Review payment files.
- Use the Settlement Manager.
- Specify deal settlement netting.

---

### Understanding the Settlements Payment Process

This section discusses the process for handling settlements within Treasury

Settlements are cashflow transactions that the system transforms into payment instructions for different financial institutions. You can generate settlements from three sources in PeopleSoft Cash Management: bank account transfers, electronic funds transfer (EFT) requests, and fee entries; and one source in Deal Management: deal entry. The settlement process involves three steps: selection, approval (an optional step), and dispatch. You first select settlements that are to be processed as payments by using the Select Settlements page. Depending on system settings, certain selected settlements must be approved prior to being processed. You can establish one of three following settlement approval methods:

- No approval required.
- Manual settlement approval, performed by an authorized user (or users) by using the Settlement Approval page.
- Automatic settlement approval, performed by PeopleSoft Workflow.

After approving settlements, you dispatch settlements to a financial institution by using the Dispatch Settlements page. The dispatch process transforms these settlements into payment files, and submits them to the appropriate institution.

The system processes payments according to the pay method that is defined on the External Accounts - Payment Methods page. Depending on the payment method type, you can specify that the payment be settled through one of two methods: PeopleSoft Cash Management electronic settlements or the Payables Pay Cycle Manager.

- For payments that are set to be processed through Cash Management electronic settlements function, you use the pages and functionality that is discussed in this chapter.

- For payments that are set to be processed through Payables Pay Cycle Manager, you should refer to the PeopleSoft Payables chapter Processing Pay Cycles to process these types of payments.

See *PeopleSoft Payables 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Processing Pay Cycles”.

## Cash Management Payment Dispatch Process

This section discusses the Cash Management Dispatch Settlements (PMT\_DISPATCH) Application Engine process, the Payment Dispatch Enterprise Integration Point (EIP) message, and the supported 8.8 payment formats.

The Payment Dispatch Process provides PeopleSoft with the functionality to generate payment files in a variety of formats and enables security and communication with the financial institution. This design provides an infrastructure that is designed for flexibility, by enabling you to define a variety of formats, encryption algorithms, and communication methods for use with the financial institution. It also provides a structure that can be modified, enabling you to adapt existing formats or add new formats easily.

When you dispatch settlements for processing, you activate the PeopleSoft Dispatch Settlements (PMT\_DISPATCH) Application Engine process. This process uses metadata that is defined at the bank setup level, the Payment Dispatch (PMT\_DISPATCH) EIP message, and payment format transformation application engine programs to create formatted payment files that are electronically submitted to a financial institution. This overall process is called the Cash Management Payment Dispatch Process.

The Payment Dispatch settlements process brings together all the payment file processing features to:

1. Gather the bank setup metadata, such as bank integration information, payment method, payment format, bank communication and encryption information, and payment chunking rules.
2. Generate the Payment Dispatch EIP.
3. Transform the Payment Dispatch EIP to the appropriate file format (payment formats have an associated Application Engine program that generates a formatted file).
4. Encrypt data by using PeopleTools security encryption.
5. Transmit the final formatted file, by either publishing it to PeopleSoft Integration Broker functionality, or by writing to a file and calling an external command to transmit the file.

The Payment Dispatch EIP message is a structure to facilitate publishing payments. The supported payment methods are automated clearinghouse, electronic funds transfer, direct debits, and wire transfers. (We discuss the delivered supported payment formats in the PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 8.8 PeopleBook, Setting Up Electronic Banking chapter.) The EIP message contains a superset of all information that is needed to settle multiple payment types on a global scale. This information includes representative parties, such as the settlement originator, originator bank, destination, and destination bank, and the various settlement identification information that is required in different countries. The EIP message can be received directly by the financial institution for processing in its raw format, with no transformation work required. Conversely, the EIP message can be processed by a transformation program that transforms the EIP message into industry-standard payment file formats.

The system uses the Payment Dispatch EIP as the data source for file transformation application engine programs to format payment output files. You set up the transformation application engine programs in the Format Catalog . Here you specify format information, such as the application engine transformation program that contains the logic to generate the format, format-specific parameters, and supported payment methods.

---

**Note.** You can configure transformation application engine programs to use a combination of PeopleCode, file layouts, application classes, and XSLT to format files.

---

## See Also

*PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Setting Up Electronic Banking,” Setting Up Payment Processing

## Settlement Workflow

Settlement selection and settlement approval functionality are integrated with PeopleSoft Workflow. When you select or approve settlements, the system routes workflow notifications to defined user's worklists, alerting them that the settlements are being processed.

If you implement multiple levels of approval, the system automatically routes the approval through the levels until the appropriate user authorizes it. For example, you establish the following two levels of approval:

- Administrator, with a 50,000 USD limit.
- Manager, with a 100,000 USD limit.

For example, if the administrator approves a settlement of 75,000 USD, the system does not set the settlement status to approved as the amount is over the defined approval limit. Instead, the system routes the settlement to the manager's worklist for approval. The manager can then select settlement approval work items on the worklist to access the Settlement Approval page, and approve the settlement.

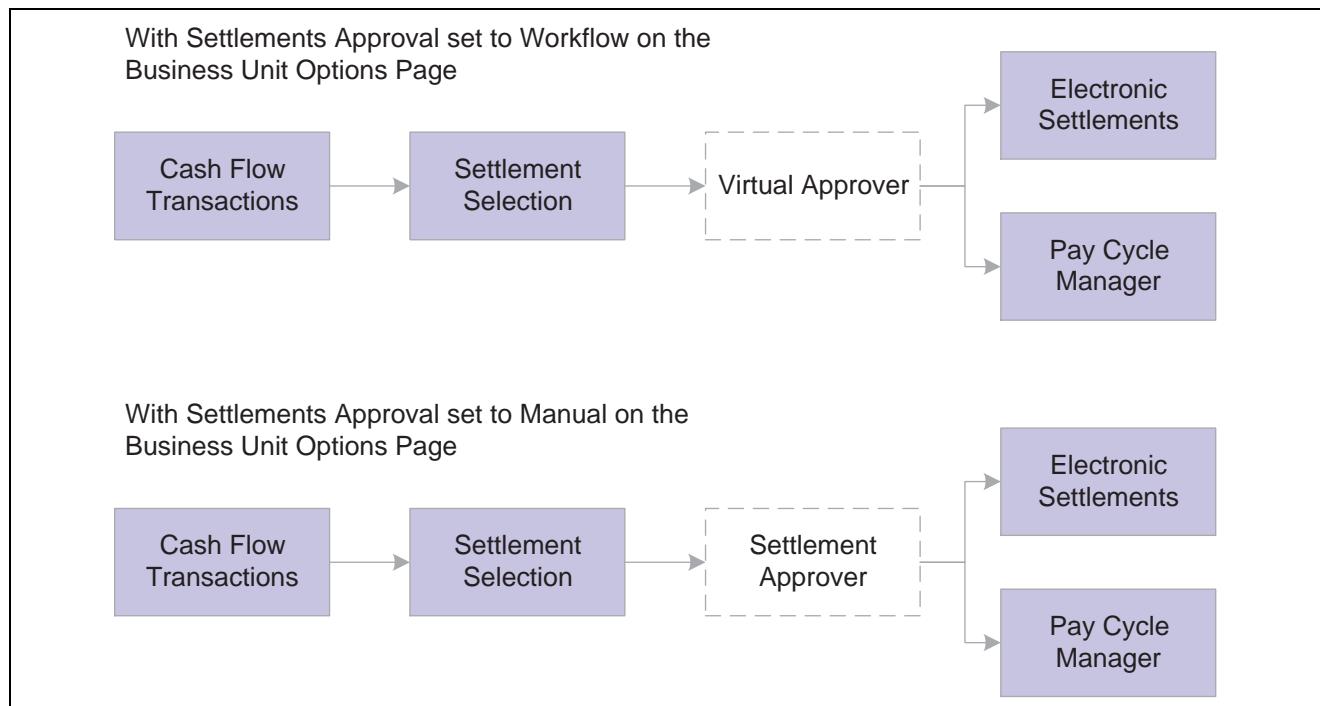
## See Also

[Appendix B, “Delivered Workflows for PeopleSoft Cash Management,” page 203](#)

## Settlement Approval

You use one of two approval methods: manual settlement approval, or workflow processing for automatic settlement approval. Once authorized (automatically, by the Virtual Approver, or through manual approval), you process the settlements for payment.

This diagram illustrates the settlement process:



Understanding the settlement process

**Note.** If you are using Virtual Approver, you can only authorize settlements up to the maximum approval limit.

## Prerequisites

Before processing settlements, you must do the following (as needed by the particular configuration):

1. Create format transformation application engine programs.
2. Define formats in the format catalog and configure new formats.
3. Define external commands.
4. Define payment chunking rules.
5. Define bank integration formats.
6. Associate formats with a bank account payment method.

If you're enabling automatic approval, you must specify Virtual Approver options on the Treasury Business Unit Options page.

### See Also

[Chapter 2, “Defining Cash Management Processing Options,” Defining Business Unit Options, page 9](#)

## Common Elements in this Chapter

<b>Account</b>	Displays the account from which payment originates.
----------------	---

<b>Bank</b>	Displays the bank from which payment originates.
<b>Cpty (counterparty)</b>	Displays the counterparty receiving the payment.
<b>Cutoff Time</b>	Enter the time by which the payment must be received.
<b>Cutoff Date</b>	Enter the date by which the payment must be received.
<b>Filter by Source</b>	Select <i>Bank Fees</i> , <i>Bank Transfers</i> , <i>Deal Fees</i> , <i>Deals</i> , <i>Facility Fees</i> , <i>Hedges</i> , <i>Interest Calculated</i> , <i>Letter of Credit Fees</i> , <i>Treasury Wires</i> , or <i>Wire Fees</i> to limit the search results.
<b>Preferences</b>	Click to establish the default search criteria for settlement selection or settlement approval.
<b>Stlmt Inst</b> (settlement instructions)	Enter payment instructions for the settlement, including recipient address and bank information.
<b>Sort By</b>	You can also sort the results by <i>Account</i> , <i>Amount</i> , <i>Bank</i> , <i>Method</i> , or <i>Source ID</i> , using this field.
<b>Src BU</b> (source business unit)	Displays the Treasury Management source business unit.
<b>Source Code</b>	<p>Displays the original Treasury Management source for the transaction. Source codes are represented by a single letter in the transaction results.</p> <p>Bank Fees: <i>B</i>.</p> <p>Bank Xfers (bank transfers): <i>X</i>.</p> <p>Deals: <i>F</i>.</p> <p>Deal Estimated Maturity Accrual: <i>M</i>.</p> <p>Deal Fees: <i>E</i>.</p> <p>EFT Fees: <i>R</i>.</p> <p>EFT's: <i>W</i>.</p> <p>Fac Fees (facility fees): <i>F</i>.</p> <p>Hedges: <i>H</i>.</p> <p>Interest Calculated: <i>I</i>.</p> <p>LC Fees (letter of credit fees): <i>T</i>.</p>
<b>Source ID</b>	Displays the source identifier code for the specific transaction.
<b>Status</b>	Indicates the payment status: <i>Selected</i> for payment, <i>Unselected</i> for payment, or <i>Pending</i> approval. When you select a payment on this page, its status changes to <i>Pending</i> .
<b>Total Payment Amount</b>	Displays the sum of all payment results, and currency code.
<b>Value Date</b>	Enter the effective date of the settlement.

**View Payment Life Cycle**

Click to access payment details and events in the settlement's lifecycle.

See [Chapter 8, “Working with Settlements ,” Using Payment Lifecycle Functionality, page 142.](#)

---

## Selecting Settlements for Outbound Submission

This section discusses how to:

- Select settlements for outbound submission.
- Use payment lifecycle functionality.

### Pages Used to Select Settlements

Page Name	Object Name	Navigation	Usage
Select Settlements	STL_SELECTION	Cash Management, Settlements, Select Settlements	Review and select payments that are scheduled for outbound submission.
Settlements User Preferences	STL_SELECTION_PREF	Click Preferences on the Review Settlements page.	Set up the default criteria for searching settlements.
Treasury Payment Life-Cycle	PMT_LIFE_CYCLE_PG	Click View Payments Life Cycle on the Select Settlements page.	View detailed and summary information for a payment, from the initial creation through payment and reconciliation.
Review Settlements	STL_SELECTION	Cash Management, Settlements, Review Settlements	View the payments that are scheduled for authorization and release.

### Selecting Settlements for Outbound Submission

Access the Select Settlements page.

**Select Settlements**

[Preferences](#)

**Settlement Search Criteria**

Source Unit	Bank	Currency	Value Date	*Status
<input type="text"/> %	<input type="text"/> %	<input type="text"/> %	11/12/2003	Unselected
<input type="button" value="Search"/>				

Total Payable Amount: 56,000,000.00 USD

Filter by Source: (All)

**Payments - (All)**

Detail	Additional Info												
Select	Source Unit	Cpty	Source ID	Amount	Currency	Stlmt Inst	Method	Status	Bank	Account	Cutoff Time	Cutoff Date	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	US001		BAX0000000003	56,000,000.00	USD	TRBK2	TRW	Unselected	USBNK	CHCK		11/14/2003	

Select All  Clear All

[Review Settlements](#)

Select Settlements page

## Settlement Search Criteria

Enter the search criteria for payments and click Search to display a list of payments.

**Status** Select a status value of *Denied*, *Selected*, or *Unselected*. The selected value determines what settlement action buttons are available to you.

## Payments - (All)

**Source ID** Click to view a settlement's details.

**Stlmt Inst** (settlement instructions) Click to view the specified settlement instructions.

**Method** Displays the payment method for the settlement, as defined in the settlement instructions.

**Select Payments** Select a payment and click to process. After you select a payment, the system changes the Status field to *Pending* (pending approval).

- If you enable settlement authorization workflow, the system submits payments to the appropriate worklists for approval. If you enable auto approval, the system marks the payments as approved and ready for dispatch.
- If you enable manual settlement approval, you must manually approve the payments on the Settlement Approval page.
- If you do not enable automatic settlement approval, the system automatically marks the payments as approved and ready for dispatch.

**Deny Payments** Click to deny settlements for payment. After you deny a payment, the system changes the Status field to *Denied*.

**Note.** You cannot deny a payment once the automated accounting process is run for the settlement.

See [Chapter 9, “Managing Treasury Accounting ,” Processing Accounting Entries, page 164.](#)

#### Edit Bank Account

Select a payment and click to change the settlement bank account. If more than one payment is selected, the payments must be in the same currency.

#### UnSelect Payments

Click to reverse the status of settlements that are pending approval. After you clear a payment, the system changes the Status field to *unselected*.

#### See Also

[Appendix B, “Delivered Workflows for PeopleSoft Cash Management,” page 203](#)

## Using Payment Lifecycle Functionality

Access the Treasury Payment Life-Cycle page.

**Treasury Payment Life-Cycle**

Source Unit:	US001	Treasury Source ID:	BAX0000000003	Business Date:	11/12/2003																			
	→		→		→		→		→		→													
Payment Created	Awaiting Selection	Awaiting Approval	Awaiting Dispatch	Payment Transformed	Payment Processed	Payment Reconciled																		
<b>Payment Details</b>																								
Bank ID:	121042882			Bank Account #:	0741-256458																			
Amount:	56000000.00			Currency:	USD																			
Status:	Approved for Release			Event Tracking ID:	4																			
Payment Method:	TRW Treasury Wire			Recon Status:	UNR																			
Settle Through:	Electronic Settlements																							
<b>▼ Payment Events</b> <div style="text-align: right;"> <a href="#">Customize</a>   <a href="#">Find</a>    <a href="#">First</a>  <a href="#">1-3 of 3</a>  <a href="#">Last</a> </div> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Event Severity</th> <th>Event Date Time</th> <th>Event Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Information</td> <td>11/12/2003 4:38:05PM</td> <td>Created by operator DVP1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Information</td> <td>11/12/2003 4:39:05PM</td> <td>Payment Selected by operator DVP1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Information</td> <td>11/12/2003 4:39:44PM</td> <td>Payment Approved by operator DVP1</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>													Event Severity	Event Date Time	Event Description	Information	11/12/2003 4:38:05PM	Created by operator DVP1	Information	11/12/2003 4:39:05PM	Payment Selected by operator DVP1	Information	11/12/2003 4:39:44PM	Payment Approved by operator DVP1
Event Severity	Event Date Time	Event Description																						
Information	11/12/2003 4:38:05PM	Created by operator DVP1																						
Information	11/12/2003 4:39:05PM	Payment Selected by operator DVP1																						
Information	11/12/2003 4:39:44PM	Payment Approved by operator DVP1																						

Treasury Payment Life-Cycle page

The buttons at the top of the page—Payment Created, Awaiting Selection, Awaiting Approval, Awaiting Dispatch, Payment Transformed, Payment Processed, and Payment Reconciled—become linked and change from black and white to color when that specific action occurs for the payment. Click a button to access the associated page and view the indicated lifecycle information.

<b>Payment Details</b>	View summary information about the settlement. The Status and Recon Status field values change as you process the settlement.
<b>Payment Events</b>	View date, time, and descriptive information about each event that you perform on the settlement.

---

## Manually Approving Settlements

This section discusses how to manually approve settlement payments. You need to manually approve or deny settlements if you do not configure automatic Settlement Approval Workflow.

### Pages Used to Manually Approve Settlements

Page Name	Object Name	Navigation	Usage
Approve Settlements	STL_SELECTION	Cash Management, Settlements, Approve Settlements	Authorize the release of scheduled treasury settlement transactions.
Settlement Approval - Preferences	STL_SELECTION_PREF	Click Preferences on the Approve Settlements page.	Set up the default criteria for searching for settlements for approval.
Treasury Payment Life-Cycle	PMT_LIFE_CYCLE_PG	Click View Payments Life Cycle on the Approve Settlements page.	View detailed and summary information for a payment, from the initial creation through payment and reconciliation.

### Manually Approving Settlement Payments

Access the Approve Settlements page.

**Approve Settlements**

[Preferences](#)

**Settlement Search Criteria**

Source Unit	Bank	Currency	Value Date	*Status
<input type="text"/> %	<input type="text"/> %	<input type="text"/> %	11/12/2003 <input type="button" value="..."/>	Selected <input type="button" value="..."/>
<input type="button" value="Search"/>				

**Total Payable Amount:** 56,000,000.00 USD **Filter by Source:** (All)

**Payments - (All)** [Customize](#) [Find](#) [View All](#) [... First](#) [1 of 1](#) [Last](#)

Detail		Additional Info											
Select	Source Unit	Ctry	Source ID	Amount	Currency	Stlmt Inst	Method	Status	Bank	Account	Cutoff Time	Cutoff Date	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	US001		BAX0000000003	56,000,000.00	USD	TRBK2	TRW	Selected	USBNK	CHCK		11/14/2003	<input type="button" value="..."/>

Select All  Clear All

[Review Settlements](#)

Approve Settlements page

## Settlement Search Criteria

Enter the search criteria and click Search to display a list of payments.

### Status

Select a status value of *Approved*, *Denied*, or *Selected*. The selected value determines what settlement action buttons are available to you.

## Payments - (All)

### Approve Payments

Select payments and click to approve settlements for payment processing. The Status of the payments changes to *Approved*.

### Deny Payments

Select payments and click to deny settlements for payment processing. The Status of the payments changes to *Denied*.

---

**Note.** You cannot deny a payment once the automated accounting process is run for the settlement.

---

See [Chapter 9, “Managing Treasury Accounting ,” Processing Accounting Entries, page 164.](#)

---

**Note.** You define settlement approval options on the Business Unit Options page. If you enable settlement approval workflow, do not use this page to approve settlements. Instead, the system changes the settlement status to *Approved* when Virtual Approver finds that the item passes the approval rules that are defined under workflow.

---

You establish the workflow approval rule definition at implementation. PeopleSoft delivers a rule in the database for the Approval Rule Set called Execute Treasury Settlements.

---

See [Chapter 8, “Working with Settlements ,” Settlement Workflow, page 137.](#)

**See Also**

[Appendix B, “Delivered Workflows for PeopleSoft Cash Management,” page 203](#)

## Using Payment Life Cycle Functionality

Access the Treasury Payment Life-Cycle page.

**See Also**

[Appendix B, “Delivered Workflows for PeopleSoft Cash Management,” page 203](#)

---

## Dispatching Settlements

This section discusses how to:

- Dispatch settlements.
- View settlement addenda information.
- Use payment lifecycle functionality.

### Pages Used to Dispatch Settlements

Page Name	Object Name	Navigation	Usage
Dispatch Settlements	STL_EFT_MANAGER	Cash Management, Settlements, Dispatch Settlements	Select approved settlements for payment dispatch.
Review Payment Files	PMT_FILE_DEFN	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Cash Management, Settlements, Review Payment Files</li><li>• Click Review Payment Files on the Dispatch Settlements page.</li></ul>	Review payment file transmittal information.
Process Monitor	PMN_PRCSLIST	Click Process Monitor on the Dispatch Settlements page.	View the status of process requests for the Payment Dispatch (PMT_DISPATCH) process.
Addenda	STL_ADDENDA2_SP	Click Addenda on the Dispatch Settlements page.	View addenda information regarding an electronic settlement.

## Dispatching Settlements

Access the Dispatch Settlements page.

**Dispatch Settlements**

**Search Criteria**

Source Code:	<input type="text"/>	Bank:	<input type="text"/>	Payment Method:	<input type="text"/>
Business Date:	<input type="text" value="11/12/2003"/>	Source Unit:	<input type="text"/>	*Payment Status:	<input type="text" value="Approved"/>
			<input type="button" value="Search"/>		

**Payments**

Detail	Additional Info												
Select	Business Date	Source ID	Source Unit	Bank	Account	Amount	Currency	Method	Status	To Bank	To Acct	Addenda	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	11/12/2003	BAX0000000003	US001	USBNK	CHCK	56,000,000.00	USD	TRW	Approved	121042882	0600-753026	<a href="#">Addenda</a>	

Select All  Clear All

[Review Payment Files](#) [Process Monitor](#)

Dispatch Settlements page

**Payment Status** Select from *Approved*, *In Process*, or *Paid*.

**Addenda** Click to view addenda information for the settlement.

**Dispatch** Click to dispatch a selected payment.

To dispatch a payment:

1. Select a payment.
2. Click the Dispatch button.
3. Confirm that you are an authorized user by typing your system login password on the Verify Identity page.
4. The system displays a message describing if the payment is or is not successfully processed.

## Viewing Settlement Addenda Information

Access the Addenda page.

Addenda information is transferred with the electronic settlement.

## Using Payment Lifecycle Functionality

Access the Treasury Payment Life-Cycle page.

### See Also

[Chapter 8, “Working with Settlements ,” Using Payment Lifecycle Functionality, page 142](#)

---

## Reviewing Payment Files

The Review Bank Payment Files pages enables you to review the staging status of the transmitted payment files. You can see if the system successfully transmitted a file. And if a file did not successfully transfer, use the View Payment File Events page to determine exactly where the system encountered a file transmittal error.

---

**Important!** Any user with access to these pages can view the file details. Restrict user access to these pages by using PeopleSoft PeopleTools Security functionality.

---

See *PeopleTools PeopleBook: Security*

This section discusses how to:

- Review payment files.
- Review payment file data.
- Review payment file events log.
- Review payment file data.

## Pages Used to Review Payment Files

Page Name	Object Name	Navigation	Usage
Review Payment Files	PMT_FILE_DEFN	Cash Management, Settlements, Review Payment Files	Review payment file transmittal information.
Payment File Data	PMT_FILE_DETAILS	Click Payment File Contents on the Review Payment Files page.	Review payments that are included in the file.
Payment File Events	PMT_FILE_EVENT	Click View Event Log on the Review Payment Files page.	Review system processing events that occurred to the payment file during transmittal.
Payment File Data	PMT_FILEDATA_SP	Click View File on the Review Payment Files page.	View detailed payment file data.

## Reviewing Payment Files

Access the Review Payment Files page.

## Review Payment Files

**Search Payment Files**

Bank Code:	Format ID:	File Status:	*From Date:	*To Date:	<input type="button" value="Search"/>
<input style="width: 50px; height: 20px; border: 1px solid black;" type="text" value="%"/>	<input style="width: 50px; height: 20px; border: 1px solid black;" type="text" value="%"/>	<input type="button" value="Search"/>	<input style="width: 100px; height: 20px; border: 1px solid black;" type="text" value="11/12/2003"/>	<input style="width: 100px; height: 20px; border: 1px solid black;" type="text" value="11/12/2003"/>	

**Payment Files**

Payment Files							Customize	Find	View All	First	1 of 1	Last
Payment File ID	Bank Code	Format ID	Status	Output Type	Created	Created By						
00000001	USBNK	820	Complete	File	11/12/2003 4:44PM	DVP1						

[Dispatch Settlements](#)    [Process Monitor](#)

Review Payment Files page

Enter the search parameters and click Search.

### File Status

Options are:

- *(None.)*
- *Canceled:* Indicates that the settlement is canceled (or voided) by a user. You generally see this status displayed for files with a clerical error, such as an incorrectly entered amount. When you cancel files, the system resets the file back to its original preselection state. This means that you can reselect canceled payments for redispatch (on the Select Settlements page).
- *Complete:* Indicates that the payment process is complete.
- *Error:* Indicates that the payment dispatch process failed. A red square also appears next to the file name. You can either cancel the payment file or recreate it.
- *In Process:* Appears if the system is still transforming the file.

### Payment File Contents

Click this link (located in the Payment File ID column) to access the Payment File Data page, and review all payments that are included in this payment file.

### Recreate File

Click to recreate a selected payment file. This conditional field appears on if the payment has an error status.

### Cancel File

Click to cancel a selected payment file and reset its payments. This conditional field appears on if the payment has an error status.

### View Event Log

Click to access the Payment File Events page and view summary event log information.

### View File

Click to access the Payment File Data page, and view payment file data that is transmitted to the bank. The system encrypts stored payment file data.

<b>Dispatch Settlements</b>	Click to access the Dispatch Settlements page, and select approved settlements for electronic transmittal to a financial institution.  See <a href="#">Chapter 8, “Working with Settlements ,” Dispatching Settlements, page 145</a> .
<b>Process Monitor</b>	Click to access the Process List page and review processing results for the Payment Dispatch (PMT_DISPATCH) Application Engine process

## Reviewing Payment File Data

Access the Payment File Contents page.

View summary information about the payments that is included in the specified payment ID.

## Reviewing Payment File Events Log

Access the Payment File Events page.

View summary information of system events that are logged for a specific file.

<b>Information</b>	Indicates the transmittal status of the file. Appears as a green circle if the file successfully transmitted; appears as a red square if the file did not successfully transmit.
--------------------	--

## Reviewing Payment File Data

Access the Payment File Data page.

You can view file data that is transmitted to the bank. This page is not editable.

---

## Using the Settlement Manager

Use the Settlement Manager to review all of the settlements from a central location. You can see the gross daily exposure, make projections, and view exposures according to counterparty. In addition, you can select a settlement category to review and approve settlements from the same page.

This section discusses how to:

- Use the Settlement Manager.
- Set Settlement Manager preferences.

## Pages Used with the Settlement Manager

Page Name	Object Name	Navigation	Usage
Settlement Manager	STL_MGR	Cash Management, Settlements, Settlement Manager	Review and manage all settlement activity from a central location.
Settlement Manager - Preferences	STL_MGR_PREF	Click Preferences on the Settlement Manager page.	Set up default search criteria for the Settlement Manager.
Cash Flow Settlements,	RUN_TRC1014	Click Cash Flow Settlements on the Settlement Manager page.	Run the Cash Flow Settlements process (RUN_TRC1014).
Review Settlements	STL_SELECTION	Cash Management, Settlements, Review Settlements	View the payments that are scheduled for authorization and release.
Settlements User Preferences	STL_SELECTION_PREF	Click Preferences on the Review Settlements page.	Set up the default criteria for handling settlements.

## Using the Settlement Manager

Access the Settlement Manager page.

This manager displays settlement categories with summarized information. To view the content of a settlement category, click the link that is located on the right in each category.

<b>Show Data for</b>	Select to view data of <i>Today</i> , <i>Last 7 Days</i> , or <i>Last 30 Days</i> .
<b>Preferences</b>	Click to establish the default search criteria for Settlement Manager.
<b>Deal Settlement Netting</b>	Click to access the Net Deal Settlements page, and view deal transactions that are coming up for netting.
<b>Select Settlements</b>	Click to access the Select Settlements page, and view which settlements are available for selection.
<b>Approve Settlements</b>	Click to access the Approve Settlements page, and view which settlements are coming up for approval.
<b>Dispatch Settlements</b>	Click to access the Dispatch Settlements page, and select approved settlements for electronic transmittal to a financial institution.
<b>Review Settlements</b>	Click to access the Review Settlements page and review settlement information.
<b>Cash Flow Settlements</b>	Click to access the Cash Flow Settlements page and generate the Cash Flow Settlement report (RUN_TRC1014).

## Setting Settlement Manager Preferences

Access the Settlement Manager Preferences page.

<b>Default Time Period</b>	Select <i>Today</i> , <i>Last 7 Days</i> , or <i>Last 30 Days</i> .
----------------------------	---

## Specifying Deal Settlement Netting

This section discusses how to:

- Specify deal settlement netting.
- Select payable and receivable cash flows.

The Deal Settlement Netting page enables you to select which cash flows to net that results from deal transactions. You can view and offset cash flows by counterparty, categorized by bank account and currency per settlement date. This creates a netted cash flow record for each counterparty and currency combination by bank account.

### Page Used to Specify Deal Settlement Netting

Page Name	Object Name	Navigation	Usage
Deal Settlement Netting	STL_NETTING	Cash Management, Settlements, Net Deal Settlements	Select which cash flows to net that results from deal transactions
Settlement Details	STL_NETTING_DTL	Click Show Details on the Net Deal Settlements page.	Select to include or exclude payable and receivable cash flow actions for a deal settlement net.

## Specifying Deal Settlement Netting

Access the Deal Settlement Netting page.

**Note.** Transactions are netted depending on the settlement netting options that are set on the Counterparty Information page. For netted cash flows, you can view the transaction detail and clear any transactions that you want to exclude.

### Search Criteria

**Netting Status** Displays *Do Not Net* or *Net Bulk*.

### Cash Flow

<b>Detail</b>	Click to see the individual transactions that compose the net amount. To modify which transactions are included in the net, select or clear them here.
<b>Cpty Ref</b> (counterparty reference)	Enter the reference ID that the counterparty provides referring to this netting transaction.
<b>CP Nettor</b> (counterparty nettor)	Enter the name of the person in the counterparty's organization that agreed to the net.
<b>Net</b>	Click to process the netting transaction.

**See Also**

*PeopleSoft Deal Management 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Capturing Deals and Trade Tickets”

*PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Setting Up External, Internal, and Netting Accounts,” Defining Netting Accounts

## **Selecting Payable and Receivable Cash Flows**

Access the Review Deal Netting page.

Select to include or clear to exclude the displayed amount in the deal netting settlement.

# CHAPTER 9

## Managing Treasury Accounting

This chapter provides an overview of the Treasury Management accounting process and discusses how to:

- Establish accounting templates.
- Process accounting entries.
- Manage accounting entries.
- Review accounting information.
- Maintain fiscal period closure.

---

### Understanding the Treasury Management Accounting Process

You use accounting templates to define the ChartFields used for various kinds of accounting activities, called *accounting events*. By associating accounting templates with accounting events, you can automate most of the accounting process. In addition, you can also manually adjust accounting entries and create ad-hoc entries.

#### Accounting Templates

The accounting template depicts the correct accounting and debit/credit configuration for a given treasury transaction/business event. For example, the purchase of a U.S. Treasury bond may involve the construction of two debit lines, Bonds Receivable and Unamortized Bond Discount, as well as one credit line, Cash. The accounting template for this type of transaction would include three predefined records to depict this particular debit/credit configuration.

The accounting template contains the following characteristics:

- A unique template ID.
- Options that determine how the correct ChartField combination is selected.
- An attribute (calculation type) that describes how the accounting monetary amount is calculated or derived.
- An attribute that designates whether the accounting build requires review.

#### Accounting Events

An accounting event describes the treasury business process activity that triggers the construction of a pending accounting build.

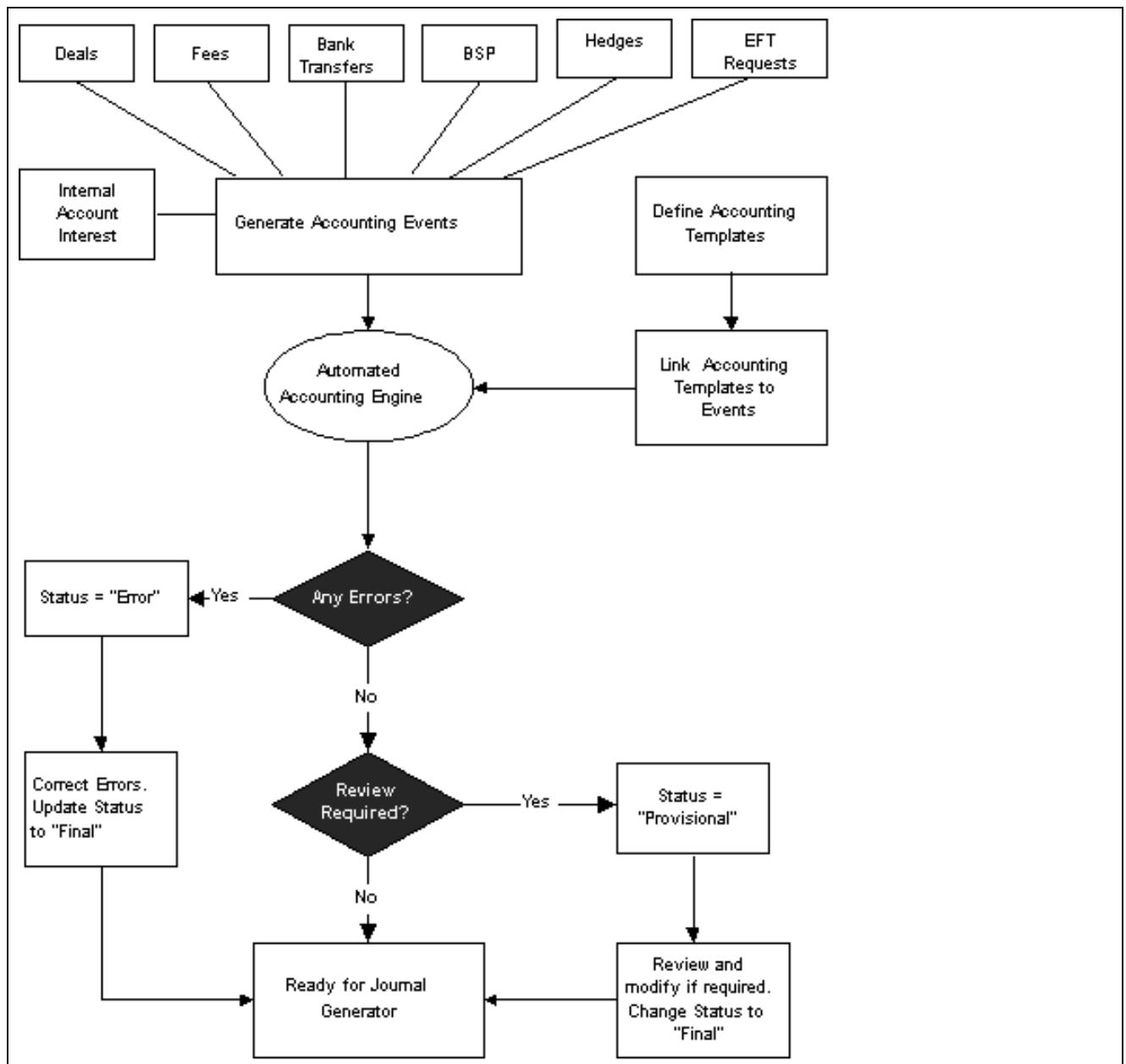
PeopleSoft delivers the following treasury accounting event types with the system:

- Deal transactions.
- Facility, deal, wire, and letter of credit fees.
- Bank transfers.
- Bank statement processing transactions.
- Hedges.
- EFT requests.
- Internal account interest.

To automate accounting entries, you assign each accounting event type to a corresponding accounting template. The template controls which ChartFields and monetary amounts to use in each accounting entry.

For treasury deals, you define the accounting event at the instrument level. You associate each instrument with various accounting events, depending on the instrument base type. In addition, you define each accounting event based on the accounting treatment (Held to Maturity, Available for Sale, Trading, or Other) and assign each accounting template to the appropriate accounting treatment. At deal entry, you select the appropriate accounting treatment. The system then automatically associates the appropriate accounting template, based on the instrument type's accounting treatment.

The following diagram illustrates the process flow:



Process flow for treasury accounting

## Interunit and Intraunit Processing in Accounting

The PeopleSoft centralized processor generates the due-to/due-from entries for both interunit and intraunit balancing. Treasury Management provides functionality to support interunit and intraunit processing using the centralized processor on the Accounting Template and Accounting Entries pages.

### InterUnit and IntraUnit Balancing Methods

Interunit refers to balancing transactions that involve two general ledger business units. The bank accounts contain the ChartFields and the rules by which their values should be determined.

Intraunit refers to balancing transactions within same general ledger business unit in which the transaction involves more than one value on the lower level balancing ChartField. For all transactions that Treasury Management generates, the system obtains the ChartFields from either the bank account or an accounting template. Inherited ChartFields get their values from the corresponding ChartField on the offsetting entry.

## Treasury System Transaction Definitions

To facilitate interunit and intraunit processing, you segregate your interunit and intraunit payable and receivable accounts by the type of transaction. The interunit and intraunit system transactions are a predefined list of transactions, with one system transaction for each major type of Treasury transaction that generates interunit and intraunit entries. By defining transaction codes and associating them with system transactions, you control the level by which you segregate your Interunit and intraunit balances.

---

**Important!** PeopleSoft delivers predefined system transactions, which you can view on the System Transaction Definition page. You should not change the information on this page because it affects the intraunit and interunit processing.

---

Accounting Source	System Transactions
Deals	TRDEAL
Hedges	TRHEDGE
Letter of Credit, Deal, Facility, or EFT Fees	TRFEE
Bank Statement Items	TRBSP
EFT Requests	TREFT
Bank Transfers	TRBAX
Interunit Interest	TRIUINT
Manual Entry	TRMANUAL

## Intraunit and Interunit Accounting Entries Generation Using the Centralized Processor

Here's an overview of the process:

1. Specify an anchor entry in the accounting template as a model for any interunit and intraunit entries.
2. Process treasury accounting using the Automated Accounting process (TR\_ACCTG), which invokes the centralized processor. The centralized processor automatically creates any necessary offset entries tagged with a source identifier label, *System IU* (viewable on the Additional Details tab of the Accounting Entries page) and inserts this data into the accounting tables.

3. If you make any changes to an accounting entry line, you must click the Update Accounting button to invoke the centralized processor and regenerate accounting entries.

### See Also

[Chapter 9, “Managing Treasury Accounting ,” Entering Accounting Template Information, page 157](#)

[Chapter 9, “Managing Treasury Accounting ,” Processing Automated Accounting, page 165](#)

*PeopleSoft 8.8 Application Fundamentals for Financial Management Solutions, Enterprise Service Automation, and Supply Chain Management PeopleBook, “Using Interunit and Intraunit Accounting and ChartField Inheritance,” Product Interface and System Transaction Categorization*

---

## Establishing Accounting Templates

To define accounting templates, use the Accounting Templates component (ACCTG\_TEMPLATES).

This section discusses how to:

1. Enter accounting template information.
2. Define additional substitution criteria.
3. Link accounting events with the associated accounting template.

## Pages Used to Establish Accounting Templates

Page Name	Object Name	Navigation	Usage
Accounting Templates - Template	TRA_TMPL_DETL	Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Accounting Templates	Define general template and template line information.
Accounting Templates - Substitution Rules	TRA_SUB_RULE	Select the Substitution tab on the Template page.	Specify a different ChartField for a template line when certain criteria exist.
VAT Defaults Setup	VAT_DEFAULTS_DTL	Click VAT Defaults on the Accounting Template page.	Define VAT default processing options for the specified accounting template.

## Entering Accounting Template Information

Access the Accounting Templates - Template page.

The screenshot shows the 'Template' tab selected in the top navigation bar. The main area contains the following fields:

- SetID:** SHARE
- Accounting Template ID:** BSP-BANKFEEVAT
- Source Type:** BSP
- Description:** BSP Bank fees with VAT
- Requires Review:**
- Journal Template:** TR\_ENTRIES
- Status:** Active
- VAT Defaults:** VAT Defaults
- Last Changed By:** (empty)
- Last Dttm:** (empty)

Below these fields is a table titled 'Template Lines' with the following data:

Line	Calc Type	Description	Trans Line	Leg	IU Anchor	*Sign	*Determined By	Acct Type
1	01	Cashflow Amount	1	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	Credit	Bank Acct	Cash
2	01	Cashflow Amount	1	1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Debit	Explicit	

Accounting Templates - Template page

**Requires Review**

Select to force review of the accounting transactions that use this template.

When selected, the system assigns error-free accounting entries using this template a *Provisional* status. To finalize the provisional entry, use the View/Approve Entries page to review and to change the status to *Final*.

If *Require Review* is not selected, the system assigns error-free accounting entries using this template a *Final* status.

**Source Type**

Source of the accounting entry, either *BSP* (bank statement processing), *Deals, Fees, Hedge Accounting, Interest,, or EFT Requests*.

**Status**

Indicate if this accounting template is *Active* or *Inactive*. This determines which templates are available to users. The system selects only active accounting templates for display and use.

This feature enables you to:

- Retain all the accounting templates you create, both current and discontinued.
- Research the accounting for all your accounting entries, whether the respective accounting template is active or not.

When an accounting template is marked inactive it is not available for processing, but is retained for historical reference. If you need to review accounting entries processed by an inactive accounting template, the template is still present in the system.

**VAT Defaults**

Click to access the VAT Defaults Setup page.

The VAT Defaults Setup page is a common page used to set up VAT defaulting for all PeopleSoft applications processing VAT transactions. On this page you can define accounting template defaults as applicable. You must first specify one of the accounting lines as a VAT applicable line to establish VAT defaults for this template.

See *PeopleSoft Global Options and Reports 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Working with Value Added Taxes (VAT)”.

## Line Detail Tab

Select the Calc Type (calculation type) to use on each template line—this varies depending on the source type. For deal-related calculation types, you must also specify a transaction line and leg of the deal.

The following table lists each available calculation type by source type.

Source Type	Available Calculation Types
<i>BSP</i>	Cashflow Amount
<i>Fees</i>	Cashflow Amount
	Fee Accrued
<i>Deals</i>	Cashflow Amount
	Deal Amount
	Price
	Purchased Interest
	Interest Compounded into Principal
	Interest Accrued
	Mark to Market Gain/Loss
	Forward Points
	FX Deal Cashflow Amount
	Forward Points Accrued
	Maturity Interest
	Maturity Principal
	Amortized Discount/Premium
	Sale Current Accounted Value

Source Type	Available Calculation Types
	Premium Accrued
	Sale Settlement
	Sale Price (Clean)
	Sold Accrued Interest
	Gain/Loss on Sale
	Accumulated MTM Gain/Loss
	Bond Discount/Premium
	Principal Payment
	Interest Payment
	Amounts Rolled Out
	Principal Rolled Out
	Interest Rolled Out
	Amounts Rolled In
	Principal Rolled In
	Interest Rolled In
	Write-Off Unamort Disc/Premium
	Write-Off Unamort Fee
	Day Delay Price
	Day Delay Purchased Interest

Source Type	Available Calculation Types
	FV Excluded time Value G/L
	CF Excluded Time Value G/L
	FX Net Investment Excluded G/L
	Fair Value Hedge Gain/Loss
	Cash Flow Hedge Gain/Loss
	FX Net Investment Gain/Loss
	Not Hedge Designated Gain/Loss
<i>Hedges</i>	Fair Value Hedged Item G/L
	Firm Commitment to Carrying
	Amortize Adj to Carrying
	De-recognize Firm Commitment
	AOCI Adjustments
	AOCI Reclassify
	Will Not Occur-AOCI Reclassify
<i>Interest</i>	Cashflow Amount
<i>EFT Requests</i>	Cashflow Amount

**Trans Line** (transaction line) For Deals source type, this indicates the line from the deal instrument. All other sources have a default of 1.

**Leg** Indicates the deal accounting leg number.

**IU Anchor** (interunit anchor) Specify one line of the template as the anchor. This is a required field because the centralized processor uses it to generate interunit entries.

**Sign** Select from *Credit*, *Debit*, *Keep Sign* or *Rev Sign* (reverse sign).

**Determined by**

Indicate how to inherit ChartField values for the specified template line. Select from:

*Bank Acct* (bank account): ChartField values are inherited from the bank account specified by the source transaction. Fields on the Chartfield tab for this line are then disabled.

*Explicit*: You define specific ChartField values on the Chartfield tab.

**Acct Type (account type)**

The General Ledger account type associated with a given bank account. For Treasury, select *Cash Account*.

**ChartField Tab**

Enter the appropriate ChartField values.

Line	Account	Alt Acct	Oper Unit	Fund	Dept	Program	Class	Bud Ref	Product	Project	Affiliate
1	111300										
2	825300										

Accounting Templates - Template page - Template Lines region - Chartfields grid (1 of 2)

Fund Affil	Oper Unit Affil	Stat	VAT Line
			<input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>

Accounting Templates - Template page - Template Lines region - Chartfields grid (2 of 2)

**Stat(statistic)**

Select a statistics code for the specific accounting line. This field is editable on the accounting entry.

**VAT Line**

Click to specify that VAT is applicable for this accounting line. You can specify VAT options only for accounts with:

- The VAT Applicable Flag check box selected on the Account Definition page.
- Source types of *BSP* or *Fees*.

**See Also**

[Chapter 10, “Processing VAT Transactions in Treasury Management,” Defining Treasury Accounting Template VAT Processing Defaults, page 181](#)

*PeopleSoft General Ledger 8.8 PeopleBook, “Using Statistics”*

**Defining Additional Substitution Criteria**

Access the Accounting Templates - Substitution Rule page.

Template Lines

Template Line: 1  Substitute Chartfields

Substitute Rule

\*Test Attribute:   \*Set Chartfield:

Substitute Translate

Attribute Value	Chartfield Value
BIA1	13000

Accounting Templates - Substitution Rule page

Use substitution rule functionality to make minor adjustments to templates without having to rebuild them. For example, you might require that certain departments perform deal accounting on deals by dealers, by specifying criteria for each dealer's user ID. Using this example, when the DEALER\_OPRID equals a particular dealer, such as BIA1, then the department ChartField equals 13000.

#### Substitute ChartFields

Select to specify which template line is affected by a rule. You define criteria for each line

#### Test Attribute

Define the database object to test in. Your selection for this field determines the available Attribute Values. You can have more than one substitute rule per template line, but additional rules must control a different ChartField value.

#### Set Chartfield

Select which ChartField to set against the Test Attribute, and enter the ChartField Value to substitute when the defined test attribute equals the specified attribute value.

## Linking Templates with the Associated Accounting Events

Accounting events are linked with their corresponding accounting templates on various pages, which is defined in this table:

Accounting Event Source	Page Name	Navigation
Bank Statement items	External Transactions	Banking, Reconcile Statements, External Transactions, Transactions Detail tab, Accounting Template ID field
Deals	Accounting Templates	Deal Management, Administer Deals, Define Instruments, Accounting Templates

Accounting Event Source	Page Name	Navigation
EFT Requests	EFT Template	Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, EFT Requests, Origin tab, Template ID field
Letter of Credit, Deal, Facility, or Wire Fees	Fee Code Definition	Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Treasury, Fee Codes, Expense Template or Accrual Template field
Hedges	Deal Accounting	Risk Management, Analyze Hedge, Hedges, Deal Accounting
Hedges	Item Accounting	Risk Management, Administer Risk, Hedged Item Sources

## Processing Accounting Entries

In this section, we discuss how to run the Automated Accounting process (TR\_ACCTG). During processing, the program “calls” the centralized processor to generate inter/unit and intraunit balancing (IU\_PROCESSOR).

### Understanding the Automated Accounting Build Process

The Automated Accounting process populates the treasury accounting event calendar with transaction reference information, event type, event date, template ID, and processing state.

When specific processing events occur (as shown in the following table), the program that builds automatic accounting entries selects any unprocessed transactions from the treasury accounting event calendar and copies them into the Accounting Events table.

Accounting Event Type	Processing Event
Treasury Deals	When an open deal is saved and the Cashflows button is clicked.
Bank Transfers	When the transaction is saved.
Fees and Charges	When fees are saved.
Mark to Market	During revaluation processing.

Once the underlying data is established, the Automated Accounting process works as follows:

1. Selects unprocessed records with the correct event date from the Accounting Event table.
2. Constructs the ChartField combination according to the appropriate accounting template.
3. Retrieves the correct monetary amount according to the calculation type.

## Pages Used to Process Accounting Entries

Page Name	Object Name	Navigation	Usage
Automated Accounting	TRA_ACCTG_REQ	Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Automated Accounting	Run the Automated Accounting process, which creates accounting entries and prepares them for the Journal Generator (FSPGJGEN) process.

## Processing Automated Accounting

Access the Automated Accounting page.

---

**Note.** The process creates accounting entries even if errors occur. Use the Accounting Entries page to correct any errors, then change the status from *Error* to *Provisional*. Use the View/Approve Entries page to change the *Provisional* to *Final*. The accounting entries are then ready for PeopleSoft General Ledger. You do not have to rerun the Automated Accounting process.

---

## Managing Accounting Entries

This section discusses how to:

- Adjust accounting entries.
- Create ad hoc accounting entries.
- Review and approve accounting entries
- View the accounting summary.

## Common Elements for this Section

<b>Created By</b>	Displays the UserID who created the entry.
<b>Created Dttm</b> (created date and time)	Displays the entry creation date and time.
<b>Last Changed By</b>	Displays the most recent UserID to edit the entry.
<b>Last Dttm</b> (last updated date and time)	Displays the most recent modification date and time.
<b>Source Code</b>	Indicates the source for the accounting entry or fee. Select from the following values:
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>(none)</i></li> </ul>

- *BSP* (bank statement processing)
- *Bank Xfers* (bank transfers)
- *Deal Fees*
- *Deals*
- *EFT Fees*
- *EFTs*
- *Fac Fees* (facilities fees)
- *Hedges*
- *Interest*
- *LC Fees* (letter of credit fees)
- *Other*
- *Securities*

## Pages Used to Manage Accounting Entries

Page Name	Object Name	Navigation	Usage
Accounting Entries	TRA_ACCTG_LINE	Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Accounting Entries	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Review and adjust automated accounting entries.</li> <li>• Create manual accounting entries online.</li> </ul>
View/Approve Entries	TRA_ACCTG_LINE	Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, View/Approve Entries	Approve accounting entries that are awaiting review.
Accounting Summary	TRA_ENT_SUM_PNL	Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Accounting Summary	View line-by-line accounting events. You can retrieve information according to ad-hoc search criteria and navigate to all functional areas of accounting.
Treasury VAT Information	TRV_ACCTG_LINE_VAT	Click VAT on the Accounting Entries page.	Review VAT information for a VAT applicable accounting entry line.

## Adjusting Accounting Entries

Access the Accounting Entries page.

### Accounting Entries

Unit:	US001	Accounting ID:	0000000039	Event:	Interest Accrual																											
Source Code:	Deals	Source ID:	000000000359	Seq Number:	1																											
Acctg Date:	01/01/2004	*Status:	Final	Error:	None																											
Description:	Offline Accounting Build - Deals																															
Created By:	Auto Accounting Build		Last Changed By:																													
Create Dttm:	10/29/2003 12:43:57PM		Last Dttm:																													
<b>Summary Totals</b>																																
266,875.00 DRs			-266,875.00 CRs		0.00 Net																											
<a href="#">Customize</a>   <a href="#">Find</a>   <a href="#">Print</a>   First   <span style="font-size: small;">1-2 of 2</span>   <a href="#">Last</a>																																
<input type="button" value="Line Detail"/> <input type="button" value="Chartfields"/> <input type="button" value="Additional Details"/> <input type="button" value="Journal"/> <input type="button" value="Print"/>																																
<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="width: 10%;">Line</th> <th style="width: 10%;">GL Unit</th> <th style="width: 25%;">Amount</th> <th style="width: 10%;">Currency</th> <th style="width: 10%;">Exchg Rate</th> <th style="width: 10%;">Base Amount</th> <th style="width: 10%;">Base Currency</th> <th style="width: 10%;">IU Anchor</th> <th style="width: 10%;"></th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>US001</td> <td>266,875.00</td> <td>USD</td> <td>1.00000000</td> <td>266,875.00</td> <td>USD</td> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input type="button" value="+"/> <input type="button" value="-"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>US001</td> <td>-266,875.00</td> <td>USD</td> <td>1.00000000</td> <td>-266,875.00</td> <td>USD</td> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input type="button" value="+"/> <input type="button" value="-"/></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>						Line	GL Unit	Amount	Currency	Exchg Rate	Base Amount	Base Currency	IU Anchor		1	US001	266,875.00	USD	1.00000000	266,875.00	USD	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="button" value="+"/> <input type="button" value="-"/>	2	US001	-266,875.00	USD	1.00000000	-266,875.00	USD	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="button" value="+"/> <input type="button" value="-"/>
Line	GL Unit	Amount	Currency	Exchg Rate	Base Amount	Base Currency	IU Anchor																									
1	US001	266,875.00	USD	1.00000000	266,875.00	USD	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="button" value="+"/> <input type="button" value="-"/>																								
2	US001	-266,875.00	USD	1.00000000	-266,875.00	USD	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="button" value="+"/> <input type="button" value="-"/>																								
<input type="button" value="Update Accounting"/>																																

Accounting Entries page

<b>Event</b>	Displays a descriptive label for the accounting entry, based on the source code value.
<b>Source Code</b>	Displays the accounting entry source, as processed by the Automated Accounting process, or entered on a manual Accounting Entry.
<b>Source ID</b>	Displays the unique identification number on the source side for the accounting entry.
<b>Status</b>	<p>Indicates the current condition of the accounting entry, either:</p> <p><i>Provisional:</i> The entry is not finalized. You can make any required changes.</p> <p><i>Error:</i> An error exists within the accounting entry. The system assigns this status—you cannot select it. Once you correct an error, change the status to <i>Provisional</i>. After the status has been changed to <i>Provisional</i> use the View/Approve Entries page to change the status to <i>Final</i>. The entry is then ready for the Journal Generator process—you do not need to reprocess it.</p> <p><i>Final:</i> The entry is ready for Journal Generator processing and is free from errors.</p> <p>Until the entry is actually processed through the Journal Generator process, you can continue to make changes to it, even if the status is <i>Final</i>. Once the Journal Generator processes the entry, the distribution status changes to <i>Distributed</i>, indicating it has been posted to a General Ledger journal and no further modifications can be made.</p>
<b>Acctg Date (accounting date)</b>	Displays the date the entry was processed through Automated Accounting, or entered as a manual Accounting Entry.

---

<b>Acctg Template</b> (accounting template)	Displays the name of the accounting template attached to the accounting entry.
---	--

---

**Note.** If you use PeopleSoft General Ledger, you can automatically reverse any unrealized gain/loss accounting generated by Treasury Management at the next accounting period. You need to create a journal template for this type of treasury accounting and enable the feature for automatic journal reversal. You must assign this journal template to the treasury accounting template in order for PeopleSoft General Ledger to perform the automatic reversals.

---

<b>Error</b>	Indicates the error source of an automated accounting entry, either:  <i>None:</i> No error condition exists. This appears when status is provisional or final.  <i>Unbalanced:</i> Debits do not equal credits, or debits and credits are not equal, but refer to different General Ledger business units.  <i>CF Combo Error</i> (ChartField combination error): The ChartField generated is invalid.  <i>No Exchange Rate:</i> The currency exchange rate for the applicable currency pair is missing. The base amount could not be converted to the accounting entry currency.  <i>Account Not Specified:</i> The account was undefined, and the amounts cannot be distributed.  <i>IU Processor Error:</i> The centralized processor encountered an error. Review the accounting entries, correct any errors, then click the Update Accounting button to regenerate accounting.
<b>Requires Review</b>	If selected and uneditable, this indicates the Review Required option is enabled in the accounting template on which this was based.

## Accounting Entries

<b>Line</b>	Displays the line number of the automated accounting process.
<b>GL Unit</b>	Displays the associated PeopleSoft General Ledger unit.
	Click the Exchange Rate Detail button to view currency exchange rate information.
<b>Base Amount</b>	Displays the GL BU (General Ledger business unit) amount in the base system currency.
<b>IU Anchor</b> (interunit anchor)	Specify one line of the template as the anchor. This is a required field, as the centralized processor uses it to generate interunit entries.
<b>Update Accounting</b>	If you edit any of the information under the Accounting Entries group box, click this button to run the centralized interunit processor.

---

**Note.** If you are editing information only in the page header (Status field or Requires Review check box), do not click the Update Accounting button.

---

**VAT**

Appears for VAT-applicable accounting entries. Click the link to access the Treasury VAT Information page.

**Chartfields Tab**

Select the Chartfields tab.

Accounting Entries												
Line Detail		Chartfields		Additional Details		Journal						
Line	GL Unit	*Account	Alt Acct	Oper Unit	Fund	Dept	Program	Class	Bud Ref	Product	Project	
1	US001	212100										
2	US001	820400										

Accounting Entries page - Accounting Entries region - Chartfields grid (1 of 2)

Accounting Entries												
<a href="#">Customize</a>   <a href="#">Find</a>   <a href="#">grid</a> First <a href="#">1-2 of 2</a> <a href="#">Last</a>												
Affiliate	Fund Affil	Oper Unit Affil	Stat	Statistic Amount	UOM							

Accounting Entries page - Accounting Entries region - Chartfields grid (2 of 2)

**Stat (statistic)**

If a statistics code is set for this accounting line on the template, that code displays here. You can edit this field. Select a statistics code—the associated UOM displays for the selected code. You must also enter a Statistic Amount with which to measure the statistic.

See *PeopleSoft 8.8 Application Fundamentals for Financial Management Solutions, Enterprise Service Automation, and Supply Chain Management PeopleBook*, “Defining and Using ChartFields,” ChartField Values.

**Additional Details Tab**

Select the Additional Details tab.

Accounting Entries												
Line Detail		Chartfields		Additional Details		Journal						
Line	GL Unit	Description		Calc Type		System Tran		Tran Code	Line Source			
1	US001			Interest Accrued		TRDEAL		GENERAL	Treasury			
2	US001			Interest Accrued		TRDEAL		GENERAL	Treasury			

Accounting Entries page - Accounting Entries region - Additional Details grid

**Line Source**

Displays either *Treasury* for accounting lines generated by the treasury accounting program, or *System IU* for accounting lines generated by the centralized processor.

**Journal Tab**

Select the Journal tab.

Accounting Entries									Customize	Find	First	1-2 of 2	Last
Line	GL Unit	Journal Template	Reference	Combo Status	GL Status	Ledger Group	Ledger						
1	US001	TR_ENTRIES		Valid	None	RECORDING	LOCAL						
2	US001	TR_ENTRIES		Valid	None	RECORDING	LOCAL						

Accounting Entries page - Accounting Entries region - Journal grid

**Combo Status**

Indicates whether the ChartField combination that the system built based on the accounting template is *Valid* or *Invalid*.

**GL Status (General Ledger status)**

Provides information on the entry's posting status. Possible values include:

- *Distributed*: Distributed to a General Ledger journal.
- *Hold*: An error condition exists; the entry must be corrected before Journal Generator can process it; or the entry requires review.
- *None*: The entry has been created without errors, but has not been processed by the Journal Generator process.

**Ledger Group**

Indicates the general ledger group associated with the General Ledger Unit on the accounting line.

**Ledger**

Indicates the general ledger associated with the General Ledger Unit on the account line.

**See Also**

[Chapter 9, "Managing Treasury Accounting ,"](#) [Establishing Accounting Templates, page 157](#)

[Chapter 10, "Processing VAT Transactions in Treasury Management,"](#) [Reviewing VAT Accounting Entries, page 192](#)

## Creating Ad Hoc Accounting Entries

Access the Accounting Entries page.

The Source Code, Source ID, Event, and Accounting Template fields are optional.

- If you complete the Source Code, Source ID, and Event fields, the system can create a link between the manual and the automated accounting results.
- If you input manual entries on a recurring basis, you can create and use an accounting template to minimize the data entry process for these entries. Any template you create displays in the Accounting Template field. When you select an accounting template for this ad-hoc entry, the system automatically populates the accounting lines with the template data.

To create ad hoc accounting entries:

1. Enter the Business Unit and optionally, an Accounting ID. Click Add.
2. Select an accounting Event from the following field values:
  - *(none)*

- *AOCI Adjustment*
- *AOCI Reclassify*
- *Amortize Adj of Carrying*
- *Barrier Rebate Payment*
- *Commodity Cash Difference*
- *Commodity Settlement*
- *Deal Booking*
- *Deal Maturity*
- *Derecognize Firm Commitment*
- *Discount Accrual*
- *Fair Value Hedged Item G/L*
- *Fee Accrual*
- *Firm Commitment to Carrying*
- *Forward Points Accrual*
- *Generic Cash Flow*
- *Initial Payment*
- *Interest Accrual*
- *Interim Principal Payment*
- *Mark to Market*
- *Maturity Payment*
- *Option Cash Difference*
- *Option Exercise*
- *Option Premium Accrual*
- *Periodic Payment*
- *Premium Payment*
- *Sell / Buyback*
- *Transaction Fee*
- *Will Not Occur - AOCI Reclassify*

3. Specify a Source Code.
4. Select a specific Source ID of the selected Source Code.
5. Review the Acctg Date (accounting date) for accuracy.
6. The default Status for ad-hoc entries is *Provisional*. Do not change this setting.
7. The Require Review check box is automatically selected for ad-hoc entries. You cannot clear this check box.
8. (Optional) Enter a Description.

9. Select an Acct Template (accounting template).
10. Enter at least one debit and one credit line to balance the entry, and select one line as the IU Anchor.
11. Enter an Account and any other ChartFields for each line.
12. Select *TR\_ENTRIES* for the Journal Template.
13. Click Update Accounting to run the centralized processor function, which creates any necessary offset entry lines and saves the manual accounting entry.

If the debits and credits do not balance, you receive an error message and the accounting entry is not saved. Make the necessary corrections, and then save the page.

**Note.** Once the Journal Generator processes the entry, the distribution status changes from *None* to *Distributed*, and no further changes can be made.

## See Also

## Chapter 9, “Managing Treasury Accounting ,” Adjusting Accounting Entries, page 166

# Reviewing and Approving Accounting Entries

Access the View/Approve Entries page.

Only accounting entries that require review and are not in *Error* status display in the search results for this page.

You can review the entry and save it with a new status of *Final* or *Needs Correction*.

**Note.** Use PeopleSoft Security functionality to identify which users have access and approval privileges to provisional accounting entries. You can define permission lists and accessible pages for a specific UserID.

## See Also

## *PeopleTools PeopleBook: Security*

## **Viewing the Accounting Summary**

Access the Accounting Summary page.

**Acctg Date** (accounting date) Displays the accounting transaction creation date.

**Status** Select from *Error*, *Final*, or *Provisional*.

**Line** Click a link to access the Accounting Entries page for that event.

**Event ID** Click to navigate back to the source transaction.

## Reviewing Accounting Information

You can inquire on various aspects of your accounting activity.

## Common Elements Used in this Section

<b>Event ID</b>	Displays the source identifier mapped by the originating source transaction.
<b>Status</b>	Select from <i>Accruing</i> ,, <i>Deactiva'd</i> (deactivated), <i>Error</i> , <i>In Process</i> , <i>Not Proc</i> (not processed), or <i>Processed</i> .
<b>Template</b>	<p>Displays the associated accounting template. For events that have not been processed yet, or are only partially accrued, you can modify the template.</p> <p>However, for BSP and Fee accounting events, if there is VAT associated with the source transaction, you cannot change the template. You must adjust VAT charges at the source transaction level—this ensures the VAT accounting is kept in synchronicity in the system.</p>



Click to access a specific Accounting Template page.

## Pages Used to Review Accounting Information

Page Name	Object Name	Navigation	Usage
Accounting Events	TRA_EVENT_CAL	Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Accounting Events, Accounting Events	View accounting events generated from deals, facility fees, and bank transfers.
Bank Statement Processing Accounting (BSP)	TRA_EVENT_CAL_2	<p>Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Accounting Events</p> <p>Select the BSP Accounting Events tab.</p>	View accounting events generated from bank statement processing.
Accounting Summary	TRA_ENT_SUM_PNL	Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Accounting Summary	View line by line accounting entries. You can retrieve information according to ad-hoc search criteria and navigate to all functional areas of accounting.
TR Journal Drill	TR_DRILL_PNL	Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Journal Drill	View accounting entries and associated General Ledger journal data. A link to the General Ledger Journal page enables you to view the journal in greater detail.

---

## Maintaining Fiscal Period Closure

This section discusses how to maintain fiscal period closure functionality.

## Fiscal Period Summary Page

The Fiscal Period Summary page enables you (or those users with end-of-period accounting responsibilities) to manage your fiscal period close process and the integrity of closed fiscal periods. Once you close a fiscal period, system processes prevent users from running Treasury Management accounting processes for that period. This helps ensure accurate end-of-period reporting and analytical results, as any additional accounting for the period is transferred to and handled by the next accounting cycle. This type of fiscal period close is considered a “soft-close” of your accounting ledger, as the closure only occurs in the Treasury Management product, not the PeopleSoft General Ledger product.

If another user (such as an accounting clerk) attempts to run accounting on entries of the closed fiscal period, the system will not run the accounting request. Functionality on the Automated Accounting and the Process Scheduler pages prevents the process request from occurring.

When you close or reset an entry or entries in a series of entries, the system enforces closing or resetting the entries in a certain logical order. This is to maintain the integrity of your Treasury Management accounting entries. You can also reset (open) any fiscal period that may have been closed in error. The system tracks and displays your most recent action for each fiscal period row on the Audit Detail page, providing an activity log.

In addition, individual business units can maintain their own Treasury Management close cycle calendars, independent of the close cycle performed for the general ledger. This means one of your Treasury business units can close using a weekly calendar, while another Treasury business unit can close using a monthly calendar.

## Prerequisites

Before configuring the Fiscal Period Accounting Summary page:

- Confirm that only those users who need access to this page have access permission, as defined in the permission lists associated with their user profile.
- Verify that the Treasury business units you will use in this page are defined with a Calendar ID on the Treasury Options page (BUS\_UNIT\_OPT\_TR).

## See Also

[Chapter 2, “Defining Cash Management Processing Options,” Defining Business Calendars, page 8](#)

[Chapter 2, “Defining Cash Management Processing Options,” Defining Business Unit Options, page 9](#)

*PeopleTools PeopleBook: Security*

## Page Used to Maintain Fiscal Period Closure

Page Name	Object Name	Navigation	Usage
Fiscal Period Summary	TR_FISCPRD_CLS	Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Fiscal Period Summary	Close or “lock down” the accounting for a specified fiscal period, in preparation for end-of-period financial report generation and analysis. This prevents other users from rerunning Treasury Management accounting processes for the closed fiscal period. You can also reset a fiscal period that has been closed in error.

## Maintaining Fiscal Period Closure

Access the Fiscal Period Summary page.

When you add rows to existing fiscal period information, the system automatically populates the Fiscal Year and Period fields with the next chronological period.

---

**Note.** Rows must be closed in ascending entry order, from first entered row to last entered row. For example, if you wish to close Fiscal Year 2002, Period 2, you must first close Fiscal Year 2002, Period 1. Conversely, rows must be reset in descending entry order. Using the previous example, you need to reset (or open) Fiscal Year 2002, Period 2, before you can reset Fiscal Year 2002, Period 1.

---

To close a fiscal period:

1. Enter the Business Unit and a Calendar ID. Click Add.
2. Select a Fiscal Year.
3. Select an accounting Period.
4. If you want to close this fiscal period, select the Close Acctg (close accounting) check box.

To reset a closed fiscal period:

1. Click Reset. The system enables the Fiscal Year and Period fields, and automatically clears the Close Acctg (close accounting) check box.
2. In Reset Reason, overwrite any existing text with the reason for the fiscal period reset.

The Audit Detail page lists audit information for each row.

**Create Dttm** (creation date and time)      Indicates the entry creation date and time.

**Last Dttm** (last changed by date and time)      Indicates the most recent edit date and time of the entry.

**Reset Dttm** (reset date and time)      Indicates the most recent reset date and time of the entry.



## CHAPTER 10

# Processing VAT Transactions in Treasury Management

This chapter provides an overview of processing Value Added Tax (VAT) in Treasury Management, provides the prerequisite tasks to setup and process VAT, and discusses how to:

- Set up VAT for Treasury Management.
- Edit VAT External Transaction details.
- Create VAT transactions for fees.
- Create VAT transactions using Automatic Reconciliation.
- Manage VAT accounting.
- Process final Treasury Management VAT transactions.

---

## Understanding VAT Processing in Treasury Management

The VAT functionality in Treasury Management enables you to automatically process VAT accounting entries for VAT applicable transactions. Your use of VAT in Treasury Management deals in large part with setting defaults and applying these at the business unit, bank, bank branch, and accounting template levels. The objective is to calculate and create a variety of VAT accounting entries to record not only the tax, but also simultaneously record the recoverable, non-recoverable, and rebate portions of the VAT at the accounting line level.

For PeopleSoft applications, primarily all of the VAT calculation values are derived from the VAT global defaulting architecture. The VAT defaulting architecture uses VAT Drivers, which are certain information elements on a VAT transaction that determine (or “drive”) the VAT processing for that transaction. (See the section Treasury Management VAT Drivers Table in this chapter for a list of Treasury specific VAT drivers.) To establish a VAT defaulting hierarchy, you must first define the overall VAT environment for your system, and then define Treasury Management VAT driver defaults on the global setup pages. For Treasury Management VAT processing, these global setup pages are accessed from the Bank Information, Bank Branch Information, Accounting Templates, and Treasury Options pages.

Treasury Management transaction sources affected by VAT are fees and interest sources. You generate or enter these transactions on the External Transactions - Treasury VAT Processing page or the Fee Entry (Fee Generator) page. When force reconciling transactions in the Automatic Reconciliation Exceptions (Bank Statement Processing) page, VAT transactions are created, where applicable, as the balancing external transaction is created (likewise, in the Bank Statement Accounting process, VAT transactions are created for any applicable external transaction created).

Though VAT is applicable to both goods and services, Treasury Management records VAT only on service transactions. As such, the Physical Nature field shown on certain pages always displays the value *Services*.

Once the setup, transactional, and accounting information is in the system, you can also run inquiries and reports on your VAT information.

As shown in the illustration, the four Treasury Management setup pages derive VAT calculation values from the primary default architecture. These VAT values are then used by the system when calculating VAT for Treasury Management accounting entries.

---

**Important!** Before setting up VAT for calculating Treasury Management transactions, you should read the *PeopleSoft Global Options and Reports 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Working with Value Added Taxes (VAT)”, and establish the primary VAT defaulting hierarchy for your system.

---

Here’s how to work with VAT in Treasury Management, from start to finish:

1. Define all VAT setup information, both on general system and Treasury Management specific pages.
2. Create VAT entries on either the External Transactions or Fee Generator pages (or automatically through the Automatic Reconciliation Exception page or the Bank Statement Accounting process).
3. Process VAT accounting through the Automated Accounting page.
4. View VAT information on VAT Accounting Summary or VAT Inquiry pages.
5. Process VAT transactions through the system using the VAT Transaction Loader page.
6. Create VAT reports.

### See Also

*PeopleSoft Global Options and Reports 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Working with Value Added Taxes (VAT)”

---

## Prerequisites

You need to establish VAT processing options in both your PeopleSoft system and in PeopleSoft General Ledger.

### See Also

*PeopleSoft Global Options and Reports 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Working with Value Added Taxes (VAT)”

*PeopleSoft General Ledger 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Processing Value Added Tax (VAT) Transactions in PeopleSoft General Ledger”

---

## Setting Up VAT for Treasury Management

Though the Treasury VAT Options and VAT Defaults links display on the Treasury VAT setup pages (the VAT Defaults link on the Bank Information, Bank Branch Information, and Accounting Template pages; both links on the Treasury Options page) you can access the Treasury VAT Options and VAT Defaults pages only when the selected business unit is VAT-enabled.

This section discusses how to:

1. Define Treasury business unit VAT processing defaults.
2. Define bank VAT processing defaults.
3. Define bank branch VAT processing defaults.
4. Define Treasury accounting template VAT processing defaults.

## Prerequisites

Before specifying Treasury Management VAT options for a treasury management business unit, you must enable VAT for that business unit. A treasury management business unit is VAT-enabled after you link the general ledger business unit representing the treasury business unit to a VAT Entity.

### See Also

*PeopleSoft Global Options and Reports 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Working with Value Added Taxes (VAT)”

## Pages Used to Set Up VAT for Treasury Management

Page Name	Object Name	Navigation	Usage
Treasury VAT Options	TRV_BU_UNIT_OPT_TR	Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Business Unit Related, Treasury, Treasury Options  Click Treasury VAT Options on the Treasury Options page.	Define specific Treasury Management VAT processing options.
VAT Defaults Setup	VAT_DEFAULTS_DTL	Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Business Unit Related, Treasury, Treasury Options  Click VAT Defaults on the Treasury Options page.	Specify default VAT options for a business unit.
VAT Defaults Setup	VAT_DEFAULTS_DTL	Banking, Banks and Branches, Bank Information  Click VAT Defaults on the Bank Information page.	Specify VAT default options at the bank level.
Bank Branch Information	BANK_BRNCHPNL	Banking, Banks and Branches, Bank Branch Information	Set up the bank branch and define VAT registration options.
VAT Defaults Setup	VAT_DEFAULTS_DTL	Click VAT Defaults on the Bank Branch Information page.	Specify default VAT information for a bank branch.
Template	TRA_TMPL_DETL	Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Accounting Templates	Define general accounting template and template line information, including VAT template line information.
VAT Defaults Setup	VAT_DEFAULTS_DTL	Click VAT Defaults on the Template page.	Define VAT default processing options for a Treasury Management accounting template.

## Defining Treasury Business Unit VAT Defaults

Access the Treasury Options page.

---

**Note.** The Treasury VAT Options link is enabled only if the General Ledger business unit representing the Treasury business unit is linked to a VAT Entity.

---

Defining VAT processing defaults (both Treasury Management specific and global defaults) for a Treasury Management business unit is discussed in the PeopleSoft Cash Management 8.8 PeopleBook.

**See Also**

[Chapter 2, “Defining Cash Management Processing Options,” Defining Business Unit Treasury VAT Options, page 11](#)

## Defining Bank VAT Processing Defaults

Access the Bank Information page.

Defining VAT processing defaults for a bank is discussed in the PeopleSoft Setting Up Banks and Counterparties chapter.

**See Also**

*PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Setting Up Banks and Counterparties,” Defining Bank Information

## Defining Bank Branch VAT Processing Defaults

Access the Bank Branch Information page.

Defining VAT processing defaults for a bank branch is discussed in the PeopleSoft Setting Up Banks and Counterparties chapter.

**See Also**

*PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Setting Up Banks and Counterparties,” Defining Bank Branches

## Defining Treasury Accounting Template VAT Processing Defaults

Access the Template page.

Defining VAT processing defaults for a Treasury accounting template is discussed in the PeopleSoft Cash Management 8.8 PeopleBook.

**See Also**

[Chapter 9, “Managing Treasury Accounting ,” Entering Accounting Template Information, page 157](#)

---

## Editing VAT External Transaction Details

This section discusses how to edit VAT external transaction details.

### Editing VAT on Treasury External Transactions

Using the External Transactions page, you can add VAT-applicable external transactions, and specify VAT options for those transactions on the Treasury VAT Processing page. To access this page, you must complete the following fields on the External Transactions page:

- Bank ID

- Account # (account number)
- Transaction amount
- Transaction code
- Transaction date
- Transaction reference ID
- Accounting template ID

See *PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Reconciling Statements,” Entering External Transactions.

When you click the VAT link, the system verifies that the business unit is VAT enabled, the Tran (transaction) Code is *Fee*, and a VAT applicable accounting template is selected. (The system determines the default business unit and bank branch information for VAT by the specified bank account number, and uses this information to populate the Business Unit field on the External Transactions page.) The Treasury VAT Processing page displays only if these conditions are met.

## The Effects of Changing VAT Defaults

The Treasury VAT Processing page displays VAT Defaults in descending order of impact. When you change multiple VAT defaults and click the Adjust Affected VAT Defaults button, specific fields will or will not be adjusted. You should work from the top down to the bottom, clicking Adjust Affected VAT Defaults at the appropriate time(s) to avoid adjustments to VAT Defaults that you overrode but not did not memorize.

For example, if you override Vendor Registration Country and click Adjust Affected VAT Defaults, the system adjusts all VAT Defaults except Vendor Registration Country and Vendor Registration ID. Then you override Place of Supply Driver and click Adjust Affected VAT Defaults again. The system adjusts all VAT Defaults except Service Type, Place of Supply Driver, Vendor Registration Country, and Vendor Registration ID.

## Pages Used to Edit VAT External Transaction Details

Page Name	Object Name	Navigation	Usage
External Transactions	BNK_RCN_TRAN_UPDT	Banking, Reconcile Statements, External Transactions	Enter external transaction information and VAT information
Treasury VAT Processing	TRV_VAT_TRAN_SEC	Click VAT on the External Transactions - Transactions Detail page.	Specify VAT transaction details for an external transaction.

## Editing VAT External Transaction Details

Access the Treasury VAT Processing page.

**Treasury VAT Processing**

[Return to External Transactions page](#)

<b>Bank ID:</b> 00001	<b>Account #:</b> 000000000001	<b>Reference:</b> EXT013	<b>Tran Date:</b> 11/15/2000	<b>Accounting Template ID:</b> BSP-BANKFEEVAT
--------------------------	-----------------------------------	-----------------------------	---------------------------------	--

**▼ Physical Nature**

**Physical Nature:** Services

**▼ VAT Locations**

**Bank Location Country:** FRA

**Vat Defaults**

**▼ VAT Registrations**

<b>Reporting Country:</b> FRA <input type="button" value=""/>	<b>Defaulting State:</b> <input type="button" value=""/> <input type="button" value=""/>
<b>Bank Registration Country:</b> FRA <input type="button" value=""/>	<b>Bank Registration ID:</b> FR 57391338076
<b>Exception Type:</b> <input type="button" value=""/>	<b>Certificate ID:</b> <input type="button" value=""/>

**▼ VAT Controls**

<b>Calculation Type:</b> <input type="button" value=""/> Inclusive	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>Prorate Non-Recoverable</b>
<b>Rounding Rule:</b> <input type="button" value=""/> Nat Rnd	<input type="checkbox"/> <b>Allocate Non-Recoverable</b>
<b>Use Type:</b> <input type="button" value=""/> COMM	
<b>Recovery Source:</b> Automatic	
<b>Rebate Source:</b> Automatic	

Treasury VAT Processing page (1 of 2)

**VAT Treatments**

**Place of Supply Country:**

**State:**

**Treatment:**

**Applicability:**

**VAT Code:**

**Transaction Type:**

**Record Output VAT**

**Adjust/Reset VAT Defaults**

Click this button if you want the system to adjust the VAT Defaults on this page affected by changes you have made to this page. All changes you have made to VAT Defaults that affect other VAT Defaults will be retained.

**Levels:** This level only

Click this button if you want the system to reset all the VAT Defaults. All changes you have made to VAT Defaults will be lost.

**VAT Calculations**

<b>Basis Amount:</b>	1196.00 FRF	<b>Basis Amount Base:</b>	1000.00 FRF
<b>Tax Rate:</b>	19.6000		
<b>Calculated Amount:</b>	196.00 FRF	<b>Calculated Amount Base:</b>	196.00 FRF
<b>Override VAT Amount:</b>	0.00 FRF	<b>Override VAT Amount Base:</b>	0.00 FRF
<b>Recorded Amount:</b>	196.00 FRF	<b>Recorded Amount Base:</b>	196.00 FRF
<b>Recovery Percent:</b>	100.00		
<b>Rebate Percent:</b>	0.00		
<b>Recovery Amount:</b>	196.00 FRF	<b>Recovery Amount Base:</b>	196.00 FRF
<b>Rebate Amount:</b>	0.00 FRF	<b>Rebate Amount Base:</b>	0.00 FRF

Treasury VAT Processing page (2 of 2)

**Note.** You can edit fields on this page only if the accounting entry has not been reconciled.

## Expanding and Collapsing Sections

To manage your VAT data more efficiently, you can expand and collapse sections on this VAT page.

### Expand All Sections

Click the expand button to scroll to and access every section on the page. You can also expand one or more sections by clicking the arrow next to the section's name.

### Collapse All Sections

Click to collapse all sections displaying only the header information. If you expand one or more sections, you can click the arrow next to the section's name to collapse the section.

## Drivers

### Physical Nature

Displays *Services*, as all Treasury VAT processing is only performed on services.

**Bank Location Country**

Displays the country in which the bank is located. The default value is the country that you specified for the bank branch location. This is analogous to the “ship from country.”

**Registrations****Reporting Country**

Displays the VAT registration country of the beneficiary (*buyer*) of the service. The VAT defaulting routine retrieves the country value from the VAT entity, as either the service country, the business unit location country, or the country set as the home country.

**Defaulting State**

Specify a state within the Reporting Country. If the Reporting Country tracks VAT by state, then VAT default values may be defined at the state level.

**Bank Registration Country**

Displays the VAT registration country of the provider (*seller*) of the service—the registration country of the bank branch. The default value comes from the bank branch.

**Bank Registration ID**

Displays both the country code and VAT registration number.

The two-character country code for the VAT registration country is display only. In addition to the three-character code (for example, Bank's Country) this two-character code is often required as part of the actual registration ID.

The system derives the default VAT registration ID number from the applicable bank branch. You can override this number. However, PeopleCode validation routines ensures the number is valid according to country-specific checksum algorithms.

**Exception Type**

Select from the following:

- *Exonerated*: Select if the VAT entity is permanently excused from paying VAT.
- *None*:
- *Suspended*: Select if the VAT entity is temporarily excused from paying VAT.

**Certificate ID**

Enter the VAT certificate ID number issued by certain governments to show proof of an exception.

**VAT Controls****Calculation Type**

Indicates whether the amount that you enter on a transaction is *Inclusive* (default value) of the VAT or *Exclusive*. If *Exclusive* is selected, the system calculates the VAT charge and adds it to the transaction amount. However, if the calculation type is *Exclusive*, and if you change the VAT amount on the detail transaction, the system changes the transaction amount according to the calculation type. The system retrieves the field value using the VAT default hierarchy, but you can override it.

**Rounding Rule**

Specify the rule you want to use:

- *Nat Rnd* (natural round): Amounts are rounded normally (up or down) to the precision specified for the currency code. For example, for a

currency defined with two decimal places, 157.4659 would round up to 157.47, but 157.4649 would round down to 157.46.

- *Up*: Rounds up and limits the rounding precision to one additional decimal place. For example, for a currency defined with two decimal places, 157.4610 would round up to 157.47, but 157.4609 rounds to 157.46.
- *Down*: Rounds down.

The VAT rounding rule you specify affects the currency numbers stored in the database as well as how currency numbers print on the reports. The VAT rounding rule affects only VAT amounts.

**Allocate Non-Recoverable VAT**

If selected, indicates that the system allocates non-recoverable VAT using ChartField Inheritance logic.

**Prorate Non-Recoverable VAT**

If selected, indicates that the system records non-recoverable VAT to an expense account.

**Use Type**

Defaults from the VAT defaulting hierarchy. You can override the values in this field. The field is mandatory when Applicability is set to *Taxable*.

**Recovery Source**

Options specified on the VAT Default Setup page at the business unit level determine if you can edit this field.

- If the displayed value is *Automatic*, this VAT percentage is automatically calculated by the system. You can not override this value.
- If *Manual*, you can edit the Recovery Percent field in the Calculations groupbox.

**Rebate Source**

Options specified on the VAT Default Setup page at the business unit level determine if you can edit this field.

- If the displayed value is *Automatic*, this VAT percentage is automatically calculated by the system. You can not override this value.
- If *Manual*, you can edit the Rebate Percent field in the Calculations groupbox.

See [Chapter 10, “Processing VAT Transactions in Treasury Management,” Defining Treasury Business Unit VAT Defaults , page 180.](#)

## VAT Treatments

**Place of Supply Country**

Displays the country that is the supplier of record for the service.

**State**

Select a state within the defined Place of Supply Country. If the Place of Supply Country tracks VAT by state, then VAT default values may be defined at the state level.

**Treatment**

VAT treatment determines which default values should be applied, and also controls, to some extent, the availability of some VAT-related fields.

See [PeopleSoft Global Options and Reports 8.8 PeopleBook, “Working with Value Added Taxes \(VAT\),” VAT Defaulting.](#)

Select from the following:

- *Domestic Service Purchase*
- *EU Service Purchase*
- *Outside Scope*
- *Self-Assess Service Import*

## VAT Details

### Applicability

Displays a default value derived from the accounting template. You can override the values in this field.

See *PeopleSoft Global Options and Reports 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Working with Value Added Taxes (VAT),” Taxable Status and VAT Rates.

- *Exempt*
- *Exonerated*
- *N/A*
- *Outside*
- *Suspend*
- *Taxable*
- *VAT Only*

### VAT Code

Displays the default value derived from the appropriate VAT defaulting hierarchy depending on the defined Treatment and/or defined Applicability. You can override the values in this field. When you click the Recalculate button, the system uses the VAT defaulting hierarchy to update fields in the Calculations groupbox.

### Record Output

The default comes from the accounting template. You can edit this field. Select this option to record and report one or more types of output VAT (Output, Output Intermediate, Output for Purchases) on transactions containing this VAT driver value.

### Transaction Type

Displays the assigned VAT transaction type. VAT transaction types classify and categorize transactions at a more detailed level for both VAT reporting and accounting.

See *PeopleSoft Global Options and Reports 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Working with Value Added Taxes (VAT),” VAT Reporting and Accounting.

See *PeopleSoft Global Options and Reports 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Working with Value Added Taxes (VAT),” Reviewing VAT Field Descriptions by VAT Driver.

See *PeopleSoft Global Options and Reports 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Working with Value Added Taxes (VAT),” Understanding VAT Transaction Type Setup.

## Adjust or Reset VAT Defaults

Adjusting or resetting VAT defaults will only affect the fields within this VAT Defaults group box:

- **Adjust Affected VAT Defaults**

If you changed any fields on this page, these changes may impact VAT defaults on this page. For accuracy and consistency, click this button if you want the system to adjust the VAT defaults that are affected by your changes. All changes you have made to VAT Defaults on this page that affect other VAT Defaults on this page will be retained.

Click the “i” button to list the fields that will be adjusted.

---

**Note.** PeopleSoft recommends that you always click the Adjust Affected VAT Defaults button after changing any defaults on the VAT page.

---

- **Levels**

The levels affected when you click the Reset All VAT Defaults button may be different depending the application you are working with and the type of VAT page you are working on.

Select the level:

- *All lower levels*

Select this field value to reset all VAT defaults at lower levels for this page.

---

**Note.** Reset completely redetermines the VAT defaults. This does not necessarily mean they will be reset to their original values. For example, the user may not have changed any VAT default values, but if a VAT driver field was changed, pressing Reset will redetermine all defaults based on the new driver value.

---

- *This and all lower levels*

Select this field value to reset all VAT defaults on this VAT page and at any lower levels of this page.

- *This level only*

Select this field value to reset all VAT defaults on this VAT page.

- **Reset All VAT Defaults**

Click this button if you want the system to reset the VAT defaults based the Levels value you selected. Any changes you have previously made to VAT defaults will be lost

## **VAT Calculations**

Except for Entered Amount, all fields in this section are display only and the Recalculate function populates them.

**Basis Amount** Displays the VAT basis amount in transaction currency.

**Basis Amount Base** Displays the VAT basis amount in the base currency.

**Tax Rate** Displays the VAT tax rate.

**Calculated Amount** Displays the calculated VAT amount in the transaction currency.

**Calculated Amount Base** Displays the calculated VAT amount in base currency. The system uses the transaction currency for the entered VAT amount, based on the exchange rate that is applicable to the transaction.

**Override VAT Amount** Enter the override amount to recalculate the VAT amount. This amount displays in the transaction currency.

<b>Override VAT Amount</b>	Displays the recalculated override VAT amount in the base currency.
<b>Recorded Amount</b>	Displays the transaction currency amount stored in the system VAT tables.
<b>Recorded Amount Base</b>	Displays the base currency amount stored in the system VAT tables.
<b>Recovery Percent</b>	Displays a system-calculated value, based on the selected Use Type.
<b>Rebate Percent</b>	Displays a system-calculated value, based on the selected VAT Use Type.
<b>Recovery Amount</b>	Displays the VAT recovery amount in the transaction currency.
<b>Recovery Amount Base</b>	Displays the VAT recovery amount in the base currency
<b>Rebate Amount</b>	Displays the calculated VAT rebate amount in the transaction currency.
<b>Rebate Amount Base</b>	Displays the calculated VAT rebate amount in the base currency.

See *PeopleSoft Global Options and Reports 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Working with Value Added Taxes (VAT),” VAT Recoverability.

## Creating VAT Transactions for Fees

The Enter Fees page generates various types of fees, as opposed to the External Transactions page, which only generates bank statement fees. To generate VAT, you first define VAT options for specific fee codes. When you create fee entries with the VAT-enabled fee codes, the system automatically generates VAT accounting and displays it on the fee entry’s Treasury VAT Processing page.

This section discusses how to:

1. Define VAT-applicable fee codes.
2. Enter fees.
3. View VAT options for a fee entry.

## Pages Used to Create VAT for Fees

Page Name	Object Name	Navigation	Usage
Fee Code Definition	FA_FEE_CD_PNL	Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Treasury, Fee Codes	Set up fee codes.
Enter Fees	FEE_GENERATOR_PNL	Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, Fee Entry	Create fees for deal, facility, EFT, and letter of credit sources.
Treasury VAT Processing	TRV_VAT_FEE_SEC	Click VAT on the Enter Fees page.	Specify VAT transaction details for a fee. This page displays only when the specified fee code is VAT applicable.

## Defining VAT-Applicable Fee Codes

Access the Fee Code Definition page.

Define fee codes for VAT.

See [Chapter 4, “Managing Fees and Account Analysis,” Defining Fee Codes, page 26.](#)

## Entering Fees

Access the Enter Fees page.

Create fee entries.

See [Chapter 4, “Managing Fees and Account Analysis,” Creating Fee Entries, page 37.](#)

## Viewing VAT Options for a Fee Entry

Access the Treasury VAT Processing page.

This page is the same as the Treasury VAT Processing page for external transactions.

### See Also

[Chapter 10, “Processing VAT Transactions in Treasury Management,” Editing VAT External Transaction Details, page 181](#)

---

## Creating VAT Transactions Using Automatic Reconciliation

This section discusses creating VAT using PeopleSoft Automatic Reconciliation.

The system creates VAT automatically when you force reconcile a fee or interest through reconciliation, if the accounting template has a VAT applicable line. The force reconciliation function inserts transactions into the Bank Reconciliation Transaction table (BNK\_RCN\_TRAN) and the VAT record (TRV\_VAT\_TRAN). It also generates a Treasury accounting event. For VAT fees to be reconciled on the bank side and system side, you must select a statement activity type for the bank statement processing template.

---

**Note.** For VAT applicable fees to display on the Automatic Reconciliation Exceptions page, you must first process the transactions using the Automatic Reconciliation Manager page.

---

### See Also

*PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Reconciling Statements,” Reconciling Transactions Automatically

## Pages Used to Create VAT Using Automatic Reconciliation

Page Name	Object Name	Navigation	Usage
Automatic Reconciliation Exceptions	BNK_RCN_VUE_UNR	Banking, Analyze Exceptions, Auto Reconciliation Exceptions	Force an automatic reconciliation to process VAT-applicable transactions.

## Force-reconciling VAT-Applicable Transactions

Access the Automatic Reconciliation Exceptions page.

---

**Note.** For VAT applicable fees to be created and reconciled on the Automatic Reconciliation Exception page, the VAT Treatment must be *Inclusive*. Reconciliation does not occur if the system algorithm determines the VAT Treatment is *Exclusive*. To reconcile these types of fees, you must enter them on the External Transactions page, and then use the Semi Manual Reconciliation page to complete the reconciliation.

### See Also

*PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Resolving Reconciliation Exceptions,” Forcing Exceptions to Reconcile

---

## Managing VAT Accounting

The only VAT accounting activity you need to perform is setting the VAT option on the accounting template. To enable automated VAT processing, VAT attributes and VAT amounts are recorded on a shadow table (VAT Transaction Record table, TRV\_VAT\_TRAN) associated with the VAT accounting lines. This process works in the background. Once you process VAT transactions through Automated Accounting process (TR\_ACCTG), the system automatically generates the necessary accounting entries and VAT accounting lines based on data in the VAT Transaction Record.

This section discusses how to:

1. Process VAT entries with Automated Accounting.
2. Review VAT accounting entries.
3. Review Treasury VAT information.

## Pages Used to Manage VAT Accounting

Page Name	Object Name	Navigation	Usage
Automated Accounting	TRA_ACCTG_REQ	Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Automated Accounting	Run the Automated Accounting process, which creates accounting entries and prepares them for Journal Generator process (FSPGJGEN).
Accounting Summary	TRA_ENT_SUM_PNL	Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Accounting Summary	View line by line accounting events. You can retrieve information according to ad-hoc search criteria and navigate to all functional areas of accounting.
Accounting Entries	TRA_ACCTG_LINE_1	Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Accounting Entries Click VAT on the Accounting Entries tab.	Review and possibly adjust automated accounting entries, or create manual accounting entries online.
Treasury VAT Information	TRV_ACCTG_LINE_VAT	Click VAT on the Accounting Entries – Accounting Entries tab.	Use the Treasury VAT Information page to view VAT information for a specific accounting line.

## Processing VAT with Automated Accounting

Access the Automated Accounting page.

To process VAT:

1. Specify the Business Unit and Template.
2. Enter a Fiscal Year and Period, or specify an Acctg Events End Date (accounting events end date).
3. Select the Bank Stmt/Trans (bank statement/transaction), Facility Fees, Deal Fees, L/C (letter of credit), or EFT Fees check boxes.

### See Also

*PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Reconciling Statements,” Reconciling Transactions Automatically

## Reviewing VAT Accounting Entries

Access the Accounting Entries page.

### Accounting Entries

Unit:	FRA01	Accounting ID:	0000000023	Event:																															
Bank ID:	00001	Account #:	00000000001	Transaction Reference ID:	EXT014																														
Acctg Date:	11/15/2000	*Status:	Final	Error:	None																														
Description:			OFFLINE ACCOUNTING BUILD - BSP																																
Created By:		Last Changed By:																																	
Create Dttm:		Last Dttm:																																	
Summary Totals																																			
1,195.90 DRs		-1,195.90 CRs		0.00 Net																															
<b>Accounting Entries</b> <span style="float: right;">Customize   Find   </span> <span style="float: right;">First  1-3 of 3  Last</span>																																			
<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="width: 10%;">Line</th> <th style="width: 15%;">GL Unit</th> <th style="width: 20%;">Amount</th> <th style="width: 15%;">Currency</th> <th style="width: 15%;">Exchg Rate</th> <th style="width: 25%;"></th> </tr> <tr> <th>Line</th> <th>GL Unit</th> <th>Amount</th> <th>Currency</th> <th>Exchg Rate</th> <th>Base Amount</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>FRA01</td> <td>-1,195.90</td> <td>FRF</td> <td>1.00000000</td> <td>-1,195.90</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>FRA01</td> <td>1,000.00</td> <td>FRF</td> <td>1.00000000</td> <td>1,000.00</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td>FRA01</td> <td>195.90</td> <td>FRF</td> <td>1.00000000</td> <td>195.90</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>						Line	GL Unit	Amount	Currency	Exchg Rate		Line	GL Unit	Amount	Currency	Exchg Rate	Base Amount	1	FRA01	-1,195.90	FRF	1.00000000	-1,195.90	2	FRA01	1,000.00	FRF	1.00000000	1,000.00	3	FRA01	195.90	FRF	1.00000000	195.90
Line	GL Unit	Amount	Currency	Exchg Rate																															
Line	GL Unit	Amount	Currency	Exchg Rate	Base Amount																														
1	FRA01	-1,195.90	FRF	1.00000000	-1,195.90																														
2	FRA01	1,000.00	FRF	1.00000000	1,000.00																														
3	FRA01	195.90	FRF	1.00000000	195.90																														
<input style="width: 20%; border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;" type="button" value="Update Accounting"/> <span style="float: right;"><a href="#">Return to Review Summary</a></span>																																			

Accounting Entries page: viewing VAT accounting line

When the Automated Accounting process is complete, you can review the created accounting entries and VAT transactions. The VAT link displays on the Accounting Entries page when the accounting line has VAT information.

#### Line

As the example above shows, the Automated Accounting process created three accounting entries. Line 3 is the VAT amount. Click a Line link to access the Accounting Entries page and review the VAT transaction detail.

---

**Note.** The number of VAT accounting lines created varies, depending on the accounting scenario.

---

**Note.** The number and types of accounting entries depends on the VAT Treatment and whether or not any of the VAT is recoverable or subject to rebate.

---

The system obtains the ChartFields used to create each accounting entry from the VAT accounting template (which is defined by VAT Code, VAT Transaction Type, and optionally the General Ledger business unit). Additionally, for non-recoverable VAT, the ChartFields used are also dependent upon whether or not the non-recoverable amount is being prorated or allocated to the associated expense account. If the non-recoverable amount is not prorated or allocated to the associated expense account, the system obtains the non-account ChartFields from the VAT accounting template.

In situations when the VAT accounting entries have two different business units—one for the Transaction General Ledger business unit (Unit field in the Accounting Entries page header), and one for the Distribution General Ledger business unit (GL Unit field in Accounting Entries - Line Detail tab), you can direct the system to inherit either business unit. You specify this option at implementation on the VAT Business Unit Option page (VAT\_BU\_OPT). During the Automated Accounting process, if the system registers two different business units in use, it refers to the options specified on this page. The system then enters the correct inherited business unit into the GL Unit field of each entered distribution line of the system generated VAT accounting entries.

---

**Note.** Accounting entries that the Automated Accounting process creates and distributes to PeopleSoft General Ledger are display only and you *cannot* adjust them on this page. You must adjust VAT accounting through the PeopleSoft General Ledger journal.

---

## See Also

[Chapter 9, “Managing Treasury Accounting ,” Processing Automated Accounting, page 165](#)

*PeopleSoft General Ledger 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Making General Ledger Journal Entries”

*PeopleSoft Global Options and Reports 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Working with Value Added Taxes (VAT)”

## Reviewing Treasury VAT Information

Access the Treasury VAT Information page.

---

**Note.** Treasury Management VAT functionality is currently limited to VAT on bank fees and other fees, recording only input VAT or the combination of input and output VAT. As such, it is unlikely that you will be using either the *VO* or *VONT* types for your VAT transactions.

---

**VAT Applicability** Displays the default value derived from the accounting template.

**Record Input VAT** This field is based on the defined VAT treatment , and always defaults to *on* (check box selected).

**Record Output VAT** This field defaults to *on* (check box selected) if the defined VAT treatment is *EU Services Purchases* or *Self-Assessed Services Imports*.

**VAT Code** Displays the default value derived from the appropriate VAT defaulting hierarchy—this is also dependent on the VAT Treatment and/or VAT Applicability.

**VAT Transaction Type** Displays the default value derived from the appropriate VAT defaulting hierarchy—this is also dependent on the VAT Treatment and/or VAT Applicability.

**VAT Calculation Type** Displays *Inclusive* or *Exclusive*.

**VAT Declaration Date** Displays the default value derived from the transaction date.

**Accounting Entry Type** Displays the VAT accounting entry type.

VAT distribution account types define the different types of VAT accounting entries that may be required. Treasury Management only uses the following VAT distribution account types:

	<p><i>VI</i>: VAT Input</p> <p><i>VIR</i>: VAT Input Recoverable</p> <p><i>VIN</i>: VAT Input Non-Recoverable</p> <p><i>VIB</i>: VAT Input Rebate</p> <p><i>VINT</i>: VAT Input Non-Taxable</p> <p><i>VOP</i>: VAT Output on Purchase</p> <p><i>VO</i>: VAT Output</p> <p><i>VONT</i>: VAT Output Non-Taxable</p>
<b>Expense Non-Recov</b> <b>VAT(expense</b> <b>non-recoverable VAT)</b>	Displays one of the following values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <i>Y</i> (yes): Indicates the system expenses non-recoverable VAT to the expense account.</li><li>• <i>N</i> (no): Indicates the system separates non-recoverable VAT.</li></ul>
<b>Distribution Status</b>	Indicates if the transaction has been loaded to the VAT Transaction Loader. Displays one of the following values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <i>DISTRIBUTED</i>: Indicates the transaction has been loaded.</li><li>• <i>IGNORE</i>: Indicates the system is not to load the transaction.</li><li>• <i>NOT DISTRIBUTED</i>: Indicates the transaction is eligible to be loaded, but has not yet been loaded.</li><li>• <i>UNDEFINED</i>: Indicates the transaction requires additional processing before the system transfers it to the loader.</li></ul>
<b>VAT Rate</b>	Displays the VAT percentage that is applied to the transaction.
<b>VAT Amount</b>	Displays the VAT amount in the transaction currency.
<b>VAT Base Amount</b>	Displays the VAT amount in the base currency.
<b>VAT Basis Amount</b>	Displays the VAT basis amount in transaction currency.
<b>VAT Basis Base Amount</b>	Displays the VAT basis amount in the base currency.
<b>VAT Recovery Amount</b>	Displays the VAT recovery amount in the transaction currency.
<b>VAT Recovery Base Amount</b>	Displays the VAT recovery amount in the base currency.
<b>Entered VAT Amount</b>	The default value is zero ( <i>0</i> ). If either the VAT calculation type is <i>Inclusive</i> , or both Record Input VAT and Record Output VAT check boxes are selected, this field is set to zero and unavailable. You can override this default value by selecting <i>Exclusive</i> for the calculation type.  This is the actual VAT amount in transaction currency that prints on the external document. If it is not equal to the calculated VAT amount (and not equal to zero), tolerance checking is performed.

<b>Entered VAT Base Amount</b>	Displays the entered VAT amount in base currency. The system uses the transaction currency for the entered VAT amount, based on the exchange rate that is applicable to the transaction.
<b>VAT Calculated Amount</b>	Displays the calculated VAT amount in the transaction currency.
<b>VAT Calculated Base Amount</b>	Displays the calculated VAT amount in the base currency.
<b>VAT Rebate Amount</b>	Displays the calculated VAT rebate amount in the transaction currency.
<b>VAT Rebate Base Amount</b>	Displays the calculated VAT rebate amount in the base currency.

---

**Note.** This page is display only. Once the Automated Accounting process creates the VAT accounting entries and distributes them to PeopleSoft General Ledger, you cannot adjust the entries on a Treasury Management page. You must use the General Ledger Journal Entry page to adjust VAT accounting entries.

---

### See Also

[Chapter 10, “Processing VAT Transactions in Treasury Management,” Editing VAT External Transaction Details, page 181](#)

*PeopleSoft General Ledger 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Making General Ledger Journal Entries,” Editing Journal Entries

*PeopleSoft Global Options and Reports 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Working with Value Added Taxes (VAT),” VAT Environment Setup

---

## Processing Final Treasury Management VAT Transactions

Once you have run all the individual processes to finalize the transactions, you should:

1. Run the VAT Transaction Loader process (FS\_VATUPDFS) to load the VAT information into the VAT Transaction Table.
2. Run the VAT Report Extract process (VAT1001) to extract the data from the VAT Transaction Tables to reporting tables, where the data is available for final reporting to the tax authorities.

Once the VAT Report Extract process is complete, you are ready to create a variety of reports on your VAT information. We discuss this information in the *PeopleSoft Global Options and Reports 8.8 PeopleBook*.

### See Also

*PeopleSoft Global Options and Reports 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Working with Value Added Taxes (VAT),” Loading the VAT Transaction Table

*PeopleSoft Global Options and Reports 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Working with Value Added Taxes (VAT),” Generating VAT Reports

# CHAPTER 11

## Performing In-House Banking Activities

This chapter discusses how to:

- Calculate interest accruals.
- Generate schedules.
- Generate the In-House Bank Statement report.

---

### Prerequisites

Before you can perform in-house banking activities, you must first:

- Set up internal banks for each business unit you intend to use to internally exchange funds.
- Define internal account information. On the Internal Account Information page you must:
  - Generate the schedule defined on Internal Account Information page (required to run interest accrual calculation process).
  - Specify both debit and credit rate index information (required to run interest accrual calculation and interest schedule generation processes).
  - Adjust the opening balances for both Service and Owner of an internal account, as needed. (The opening balances default to zero on setup.)
- Check that an accounting template that is setup for internal account interest accruals is installed.

### See Also

*PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Setting Up External, Internal, and Netting Accounts,” Defining Internal Account Information

*PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Receiving and Updating Bank Statements”

---

### Managing In-House Banking Activities

This section discusses how to:

- Automatically calculate interest accruals using the IHB Interest Accruals (in house banking interest accruals) Application Engine process (TR\_TRINTACU).
- View activity on your internal accounts.

- Generate schedules for interest accrual.

## Pages Used to Manage In-House Banking Activities

Page Name	Object Name	Navigation	Usage
Generate Schedules	SCHEDULE_CREATE	Click Generate Schedule on the Internal Accounts - Account Information page.	Create the schedule for interest to accrue. The frequency of the schedule determines the frequency with which the interest is posted to the internal account balance.
Calculating Interest Accruals	TR_AE_RUNCNTL	Cash Management, In-House Banking, Calculate Interest Accruals	Run the IHB Interest Accruals process to calculate the amount of interest.
Internal Account Activity	BNK_INT_ACCT_BAL	Cash Management, In-House Banking, Review Internal Account Activity	View data that is related to activity on your internal accounts.

## Generating Schedules

Generate interest accrual schedules.

See *PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Setting Up External, Internal, and Netting Accounts,” Generating Interest Accrual Schedules.

## Calculating Interest Accruals

Access the Calculate Interest Accruals page.

**Calculate Interest Accruals**

User ID: VP1	Run Control ID: VP1	<a href="#">Process Monitor</a>	<input type="button" value="Run"/>						
Program Name: TR_TRINTACU									
Last Run									
Process Origin: Other	Process Instance:	Status:	Pending						
Process Frequency: Once	Market:								
<b>Parameters</b> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between; align-items: center;"> <span>Find</span> <span>First</span> <span>1 of 1</span> <span>Last</span> </div> <table> <tr> <td>State Record: TR_INTACU_AET</td> <td>Bind Variable Name: ACCTG_TMPL_ID</td> <td><input type="button" value=""/></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Value: INTERNAL_INTACC</td> <td colspan="2"><input type="button" value=""/></td> </tr> </table>				State Record: TR_INTACU_AET	Bind Variable Name: ACCTG_TMPL_ID	<input type="button" value=""/>	Value: INTERNAL_INTACC	<input type="button" value=""/>	
State Record: TR_INTACU_AET	Bind Variable Name: ACCTG_TMPL_ID	<input type="button" value=""/>							
Value: INTERNAL_INTACC	<input type="button" value=""/>								

Calculate Interest Accruals page

---

**Note.** You may only run the interest accrual process once each day—only when the system date changes can you run the process again. This means that if you run this process, then perform any activity that affects an internal bank account for a prior date, you cannot run interest accruals again (in the same day) to reset the prior day interest accrual activity. You must wait until the next day to run the process and see the affect on the prior day(s) activity.

Because of this system limitation, you should perform any internal account prior day activity *before* running the interest accrual process.

---

**Bind Variable Name**

In the Parameters grid is an Application Engine run control function that enables you to specify the variable for which you are setting the value. Select the Bind Variable Name of *ACCT\_TMPL\_ID*, and enter *INTERNAL\_INTACC* in the Value field. You can add records and specify as many bind variable names as are pertinent to the job.

---

## Generating the In-House Bank Statement Report

This report shows balance, debit, credit, and activity information for a selected bank over a specified date range.

### Page Used to Generate the In-House Bank Statement Report

Page Name	Object Name	Navigation	Usage
In-House Bank Statement	RUN_TRC3005	Cash Management, In-House Banking, In-House Bank Statements Report	Define run parameters for the In-House Bank Statement report (TRC3005).



## APPENDIX A

# Cash Management - Configuring Batch Processes

This appendix discusses how to configure temporary tables for batch processing.

## Configuring Temporary Tables for Batch Processing

When you run batch processes in parallel, you risk data contention and deadlocks on temporary tables. To avoid this, PeopleTools enables you to dedicate specific instances of temporary tables for each process. When PeopleSoft Application Engine manages a dedicated temporary table instance, it controls the locking of the table before use and the unlocking of the table after use.

When you decide how many temporary table instances to dedicate for a process, consider the number of temporary tables that the process uses. More instances result in more copies of the temporary tables on the system. For example, if a process uses 25 temporary tables and you have 10 instances for a process, you will have 250 temporary tables on the system.

If you run processes in parallel and all of the dedicated temporary table instances are in use, the performance of the process decreases. You need to find a balance that works for your organization.

---

**Note.** When you specify the number of instances, PeopleSoft Application Designer displays a list of the temporary tables for the process. Use the list to determine how many temporary tables each process uses.

---

Specify how many temporary table instances to dedicate for each of the following batch processes that can run in parallel in PeopleSoft Cash Management:

- Bank Statement Accounting (TR\_STMTACCTG).
- IHB (in house banking) Interest Accruals (TR\_TRINTACU)
- Netting Auto Selection (TR\_NET\_ASEL).
- Netting Closing (TR\_NET\_ARCLS {library run from AP\_APY2015}).
- Netting Closing (TR\_NET\_CLOSE {library run from AP\_APY2015}).
- Cash Position/Position Monitor (TR\_POS\_TOTAL).
- Position Worksheet (TR\_POSN\_LIB {library run from TR\_POSN}).

The PeopleTools documentation discusses the usage of temporary tables in detail and describes how to specify the number of instances.

If you run any of the PeopleSoft General Ledger COBOL processes, also configure the temporary tables for those processes. The *PeopleSoft General Ledger 8.8 PeopleBook* discusses how to do this in detail.

## See Also

*PeopleSoft General Ledger 8.8 PeopleBook*, “Optimizing General Ledger Performance”

*PeopleTools PeopleBook: PeopleSoft Application Engine*

## APPENDIX B

# Delivered Workflows for PeopleSoft Cash Management

This appendix discusses delivered workflows for PeopleSoft Cash Management.

### See Also

*PeopleTools PeopleBook: PeopleSoft Workflow*

*PeopleTools PeopleBook: Using PeopleSoft Applications*

---

## Delivered Workflows for PeopleSoft Cash Management

This section discusses PeopleSoft Deal Management workflows. The workflows are listed alphabetically by workflow name.

### Settlement Selection and Settlement Approval

This section discusses the Settlement Selection and Settlement Approval workflow.

Note that these workflows are separate workflows that use the same pages and processes.

#### Description

<b>Event Description</b>	When you select a settlement on the Select Settlements page, or approve a settlement on the Approve Settlements page. {The Select Settlements and Approve Settlements page have the same object name (STL_SELECTION).}
<b>Action Description</b>	Routes names of selected or approved settlements to an assigned user's worklist.
<b>Notification Method</b>	Worklist
<b>Active or Inactive</b>	Active

#### Workflow Objects

<b>Approval Rule Set</b>	Execute Treasury Settlements
<b>Business Process</b>	Managing Cash (TR_MANAGE_CASH)
<b>Activity</b>	Execute Treasury Settlements
<b>Role</b>	In PeopleTools Application Designer, you can edit the delivered approval rule set to change the assigned roles.



## APPENDIX C

# PeopleSoft Cash Management Reports

This appendix provides an overview of PeopleSoft Cash Management reports and enables you to view a summary table of all reports.

---

**Note.** For samples of these reports, see the Portable Document Format (PDF) fields that are published on CD-ROM with your documentation.

---

### See Also

*PeopleTools PeopleBook: PeopleSoft Process Scheduler*

---

## PeopleSoft Cash Management Reports: A to Z

This table lists all of the reports provided with PeopleSoft Cash Management, sorted alphanumerically by report ID. The reports listed are all Crystal reports.

Report ID and Report Name	Description	Navigation	Run Control Page
FIN3003 Fees & Interest	Shows miscellaneous transaction details for a specified bank ID, bank account, and statement ID number.	Cash Management, Reports, Fees and Interest	RUN_FIN3003
TRC1000 Accounting Entries	Shows comprehensive accounting entry information for a specified business unit and accounting ID.  See <a href="#">Chapter 9, “Managing Treasury Accounting.”</a> <a href="#">Processing Automated Accounting</a> , page 165.	Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Accounting Entries Report	RUN_TRC1000
TRC1004 Actual vs. Projected Cash Positions	Lists actual versus projected cash positions for a specified business unit, tree name, and tree node.  See <a href="#">Chapter 5, “Defining Cash Positions.”</a> <a href="#">Generating Cash Management Position Reports</a> , page 77.	Cash Management, Reports, Actual v Projected by BU	RUN_TRC1004

Report ID and Report Name	Description	Navigation	Run Control Page
TRC1008 Actual vs. Projected Cash Positions by Currency	<p>Lists, by currency code, actual versus projected cash positions for a specified business unit, tree name, and tree node.</p> <p>See <a href="#">Chapter 5, “Defining Cash Positions,” Generating Cash Management Position Reports, page 77.</a></p>	Cash Management, Reports, Actual v Projected by BU	RUN_TRC1008
TRC1009 Actual vs. Projected Cash Positions by Account	<p>Lists actual versus projected cash positions for comparison by bank account number.</p> <p>See <a href="#">Chapter 5, “Defining Cash Positions,” Generating Cash Management Position Reports, page 77.</a></p>	Cash Management, Reports, Actual v Projected by Account	RUN_TRC1009
TRC1010 Settlement Instructions	Shows settlement instruction information for all settlement IDs of a specified SetID.	Cash Management, Reports, Settlement Instructions	RUN_TRC1010
TRC1014 Cash Flow Settlements	Lists bank, account, and settlement information for cashflows of a specified business unit and timeframe.	Cash Management, Reports, Cash Flow Settlements	RUN_TRC1014
TRC3005 In-House Bank Statement	<p>Lists transaction and interest accrual activity for a specified bank and account during a defined timeframe.</p> <p>See <a href="#">Chapter 5, “Defining Cash Positions,” Generating Cash Management Position Reports, page 77.</a></p>	Cash Management, In-House Banking, In-House Bank Statements	RUN_TRC3005
TRC4000 Netting Balance List	Lists comprehensive balance information for all nets of a specified netting status and timeframe.	Cash Management, Reports, Netting Balance List	RUN_TRC4000
TRC4010 Netting Advice Balance Summary	Lists total receivable, total payable, and total net amounts for a specified netting status and timeframe. The amounts are formatted for faxing.	Cash Management, Report,Netting Advice Summary	RUN_TRC4010
TRC4020 Netting Advice Balance Detail	Lists detailed information (such as accounts payable/accounts receivable association, business unit, gross amount, and net amount) for all nets of a specified netting status and timeframe.	Cash Management, Report, Netting Advice Detail	RUN_TRC4020

Report ID and Report Name	Description	Navigation	Run Control Page
TRC4050 Fee Structures	Shows comprehensive fee structure information for a specified bank code, including the fee description, type, minimum and maximum ranges, and rate and price information.	Banking, Account Analysis, Fee Structures Report	RUN_TRC4050
TRC4060 Actual vs. Projected Cash Position	<p>Lists actual versus projected cash positions by a specified tree name and value date.</p> <p>See <a href="#">Chapter 5, “Defining Cash Positions.” Generating Cash Management Position Reports, page 77.</a></p>	Cash Management, Reports, Actual v Projected by Position	RUN_TRC4060
TRC4090 Book to Bank Reconciliation	Lists Book to Bank Reconciliation details for a selected bank account, including adjusted bank statement balance or ledger balance information.	<p>Banking, Reconcile Statements, Book to Bank Reconciliation</p> <p>Click Detail on the Book to Bank Reconciliation page.</p> <p>Click Report on the Book to Bank Reconciliation Details page.</p>	RUN_TRC4090



# Glossary of PeopleSoft Terms

<b>absence entitlement</b>	This element defines rules for granting paid time off for valid absences, such as sick time, vacation, and maternity leave. An absence entitlement element defines the entitlement amount, frequency, and entitlement period.
<b>absence take</b>	This element defines the conditions that must be met before a payee is entitled to take paid time off.
<b>accounting class</b>	In PeopleSoft Enterprise Performance Management, the accounting class defines how a resource is treated for generally accepted accounting practices. The Inventory class indicates whether a resource becomes part of a balance sheet account, such as inventory or fixed assets, while the Non-inventory class indicates that the resource is treated as an expense of the period during which it occurs.
<b>accounting date</b>	The accounting date indicates when a transaction is recognized, as opposed to the date the transaction actually occurred. The accounting date and transaction date can be the same. The accounting date determines the period in the general ledger to which the transaction is to be posted. You can only select an accounting date that falls within an open period in the ledger to which you are posting. The accounting date for an item is normally the invoice date.
<b>accounting split</b>	The accounting split method indicates how expenses are allocated or divided among one or more sets of accounting ChartFields.
<b>accumulator</b>	You use an accumulator to store cumulative values of defined items as they are processed. You can accumulate a single value over time or multiple values over time. For example, an accumulator could consist of all voluntary deductions, or all company deductions, enabling you to accumulate amounts. It allows total flexibility for time periods and values accumulated.
<b>action reason</b>	The reason an employee's job or employment information is updated. The action reason is entered in two parts: a personnel action, such as a promotion, termination, or change from one pay group to another—and a reason for that action. Action reasons are used by PeopleSoft Human Resources, PeopleSoft Benefits Administration, PeopleSoft Stock Administration, and the COBRA Administration feature of the Base Benefits business process.
<b>action template</b>	In PeopleSoft Receivables, outlines a set of escalating actions that the system or user performs based on the period of time that a customer or item has been in an action plan for a specific condition.
<b>activity</b>	In PeopleSoft Enterprise Learning Management, an instance of a catalog item (sometimes called a class) that is available for enrollment. The activity defines such things as the costs that are associated with the offering, enrollment limits and deadlines, and waitlisting capacities.
	In PeopleSoft Enterprise Performance Management, the work of an organization and the aggregation of actions that are used for activity-based costing.
	In PeopleSoft Project Costing, the unit of work that provides a further breakdown of projects—usually into specific tasks.
	In PeopleSoft Workflow, a specific transaction that you might need to perform in a business process. Because it consists of the steps that are used to perform a transaction, it is also known as a step map.

<b>agreement</b>	In PeopleSoft eSettlements, provides a way to group and specify processing options, such as payment terms, pay from a bank, and notifications by a buyer and supplier location combination.
<b>allocation rule</b>	In PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management, an expression within compensation plans that enables the system to assign transactions to nodes and participants. During transaction allocation, the allocation engine traverses the compensation structure from the current node to the root node, checking each node for plans that contain allocation rules.
<b>alternate account</b>	A feature in PeopleSoft General Ledger that enables you to create a statutory chart of accounts and enter statutory account transactions at the detail transaction level, as required for recording and reporting by some national governments.
<b>AR specialist</b>	Abbreviation for <i>receivables specialist</i> . In PeopleSoft Receivables, an individual in who tracks and resolves deductions and disputed items.
<b>arbitration plan</b>	In PeopleSoft Enterprise Pricer, defines how price rules are to be applied to the base price when the transaction is priced.
<b>assessment rule</b>	In PeopleSoft Receivables, a user-defined rule that the system uses to evaluate the condition of a customer's account or of individual items to determine whether to generate a follow-up action.
<b>asset class</b>	An asset group used for reporting purposes. It can be used in conjunction with the asset category to refine asset classification.
<b>attribute/value pair</b>	In PeopleSoft Directory Interface, relates the data that makes up an entry in the directory information tree.
<b>authentication server</b>	A server that is set up to verify users of the system.
<b>base time period</b>	In PeopleSoft Business Planning, the lowest level time period in a calendar.
<b>benchmark job</b>	In PeopleSoft Workforce Analytics, a benchmark job is a job code for which there is corresponding salary survey data from published, third-party sources.
<b>book</b>	In PeopleSoft Asset Management, used for storing financial and tax information, such as costs, depreciation attributes, and retirement information on assets.
<b>branch</b>	A tree node that rolls up to nodes above it in the hierarchy, as defined in PeopleSoft Tree Manager.
<b>budgetary account only</b>	An account used by the system only and not by users; this type of account does not accept transactions. You can only budget with this account. Formerly called "system-maintained account."
<b>budget check</b>	In commitment control, the processing of source transactions against control budget ledgers, to see if they pass, fail, or pass with a warning.
<b>budget control</b>	In commitment control, budget control ensures that commitments and expenditures don't exceed budgets. It enables you to track transactions against corresponding budgets and terminate a document's cycle if the defined budget conditions are not met. For example, you can prevent a purchase order from being dispatched to a vendor if there are insufficient funds in the related budget to support it.
<b>budget period</b>	The interval of time (such as 12 months or 4 quarters) into which a period is divided for budgetary and reporting purposes. The ChartField allows maximum flexibility to define operational accounting time periods without restriction to only one calendar.
<b>business event</b>	In PeopleSoft Receivables, defines the processing characteristics for the Receivable Update process for a draft activity.

<b>business unit</b>	In PeopleSoft Sales Incentive Management, an original business transaction or activity that may justify the creation of a PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management event (a sale, for example).
<b>buyer</b>	A corporation or a subset of a corporation that is independent with regard to one or more operational or accounting functions.
<b>catalog item</b>	In PeopleSoft Enterprise Learning Management, a specific topic that a learner can study and have tracked. For example, “Introduction to Microsoft Word.” A catalog item contains general information about the topic and includes a course code, description, categorization, keywords, and delivery methods. A catalog item can have one or more learning activities.
<b>catalog map</b>	In PeopleSoft Catalog Management, translates values from the catalog source data to the format of the company’s catalog.
<b>catalog partner</b>	In PeopleSoft Catalog Management, shares responsibility with the enterprise catalog manager for maintaining catalog content.
<b>categorization</b>	Associates partner offerings with catalog offerings and groups them into enterprise catalog categories.
<b>channel</b>	In PeopleSoft MultiChannel Framework, email, chat, voice (computer telephone integration [CTI]), or a generic event.
<b>ChartField</b>	A field that stores a chart of accounts, resources, and so on, depending on the PeopleSoft application. ChartField values represent individual account numbers, department codes, and so forth.
<b>ChartField balancing</b>	You can require specific ChartFields to match up (balance) on the debit and the credit side of a transaction.
<b>ChartField combination edit</b>	The process of editing journal lines for valid ChartField combinations based on user-defined rules.
<b>ChartKey</b>	One or more fields that uniquely identify each row in a table. Some tables contain only one field as the key, while others require a combination.
<b>checkbook</b>	In PeopleSoft Promotions Management, enables you to view financial data (such as planned, incurred, and actual amounts) that is related to funds and trade promotions.
<b>Class ChartField</b>	A ChartField value that identifies a unique appropriation budget key when you combine it with a fund, department ID, and program code, as well as a budget period. Formerly called <i>sub-classification</i> .
<b>clone</b>	In PeopleCode, to make a unique copy. In contrast, to <i>copy</i> may mean making a new reference to an object, so if the underlying object is changed, both the copy and the original change.
<b>collection</b>	To make a set of documents available for searching in Verity, you must first create at least one collection. A collection is set of directories and files that allow search application users to use the Verity search engine to quickly find and display source documents that match search criteria. A collection is a set of statistics and pointers to the source documents, stored in a proprietary format on a file server. Because a collection can only store information for a single location, PeopleSoft maintains a set of collections (one per language code) for each search index object.

<b>collection rule</b>	In PeopleSoft Receivables, a user-defined rule that defines actions to take for a customer based on both the amount and the number of days past due for outstanding balances.
<b>compensation object</b>	In PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management, a node within a compensation structure. Compensation objects are the building blocks that make up a compensation structure's hierarchical representation.
<b>compensation structure</b>	In PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management, a hierarchical relationship of compensation objects that represents the compensation-related relationship between the objects.
<b>condition</b>	In PeopleSoft Receivables, occurs when there is a change of status for a customer's account, such as reaching a credit limit or exceeding a user-defined balance due.
<b>configuration parameter catalog</b>	Used to configure an external system with PeopleSoft. For example, a configuration parameter catalog might set up configuration and communication parameters for an external server.
<b>configuration plan</b>	In PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management, configuration plans hold allocation information for common variables (not incentive rules) and are attached to a node without a participant. Configuration plans are not processed by transactions.
<b>content reference</b>	Content references are pointers to content registered in the portal registry. These are typically either URLs or iScripts. Content references fall into three categories: target content, templates, and template pagelets.
<b>context</b>	In PeopleCode, determines which buffer fields can be contextually referenced and which is the current row of data on each scroll level when a PeopleCode program is running.
<b>control table</b>	In PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management, a mechanism that is used to determine the scope of a processing run. PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management uses three types of context: plan, period, and run-level.
<b>cost profile</b>	Stores information that controls the processing of an application. This type of processing might be consistent throughout an organization, or it might be used only by portions of the organization for more limited sharing of data.
<b>cost row</b>	A combination of a receipt cost method, a cost flow, and a deplete cost method. A profile is associated with a cost book and determines how items in that book are valued, as well as how the material movement of the item is valued for the book.
<b>current learning</b>	A cost transaction and amount for a set of ChartFields.
<b>data acquisition</b>	In PeopleSoft Enterprise Learning Management, a self-service repository for all of a learner's in-progress learning activities and programs.
<b>data elements</b>	In PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management, the process during which raw business transactions are acquired from external source systems and fed into the operational data store (ODS).
<b>dataset</b>	Data elements, at their simplest level, define a subset of data and the rules by which to group them.
	For Workforce Analytics, data elements are rules that tell the system what measures to retrieve about your workforce groups.
	A data grouping that enables role-based filtering and distribution of data. You can limit the range and quantity of data that is displayed for a user by associating dataset rules with user roles. The result of dataset rules is a set of data that is appropriate for the user's roles.

<b>delivery method</b>	In PeopleSoft Enterprise Learning Management, identifies the primary type of delivery method in which a particular learning activity is offered. Also provides default values for the learning activity, such as cost and language. This is primarily used to help learners search the catalog for the type of delivery from which they learn best. Because PeopleSoft Enterprise Learning Management is a blended learning system, it does not enforce the delivery method.
<b>delivery method type</b>	In PeopleSoft Supply Chain Management, identifies the method by which goods are shipped to their destinations (such as truck, air, rail, and so on). The delivery method is specified when creating shipment schedules.
<b>directory information tree</b>	In PeopleSoft Enterprise Learning Management, identifies how learning activities can be delivered—for example, through online learning, classroom instruction, seminars, books, and so forth—in an organization. The type determines whether the delivery method includes scheduled components.
<b>document sequencing</b>	
<b>dynamic detail tree</b>	A tree that takes its detail values—dynamic details—directly from a table in the database, rather than from a range of values that are entered by the user.
<b>edit table</b>	A table in the database that has its own record definition, such as the Department table. As fields are entered into a PeopleSoft application, they can be validated against an edit table to ensure data integrity throughout the system.
<b>effective date</b>	A method of dating information in PeopleSoft applications. You can predate information to add historical data to your system, or postdate information in order to enter it before it actually goes into effect. By using effective dates, you don't delete values; you enter a new value with a current effective date.
<b>EIM ledger</b>	Abbreviation for <i>Enterprise Incentive Management ledger</i> . In PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management, an object to handle incremental result gathering within the scope of a participant. The ledger captures a result set with all of the appropriate traces to the data origin and to the processing steps of which it is a result.
<b>elimination set</b>	In PeopleSoft General Ledger, a related group of intercompany accounts that is processed during consolidations.
<b>entry event</b>	In PeopleSoft General Ledger, Receivables, Payables, Purchasing, and Billing, a business process that generates multiple debits and credits resulting from single transactions to produce standard, supplemental accounting entries.
<b>equitization</b>	In PeopleSoft General Ledger, a business process that enables parent companies to calculate the net income of subsidiaries on a monthly basis and adjust that amount to increase the investment amount and equity income amount before performing consolidations.
<b>event</b>	A predefined point either in the Component Processor flow or in the program flow. As each point is encountered, the event activates each component, triggering any PeopleCode program that is associated with that component and that event. Examples of events are FieldChange, SavePreChange, and RowDelete.
<b>event propagation process</b>	In PeopleSoft Human Resources, also refers to an incident that affects benefits eligibility.
<b>event propagation process</b>	In PeopleSoft Sales Incentive Management, a process that determines, through logic, the propagation of an original PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management event and creates a derivative (duplicate) of the original event to be processed by other objects.

	Sales Incentive Management uses this mechanism to implement splits, roll-ups, and so on. Event propagation determines who receives the credit.
<b>exception</b>	In PeopleSoft Receivables, an item that either is a deduction or is in dispute.
<b>exclusive pricing</b>	In PeopleSoft Order Management, a type of arbitration plan that is associated with a price rule. Exclusive pricing is used to price sales order transactions.
<b>fact</b>	In PeopleSoft applications, facts are numeric data values from fields from a source database as well as an analytic application. A fact can be anything you want to measure your business by, for example, revenue, actual, budget data, or sales numbers. A fact is stored on a fact table.
<b>forecast item</b>	A logical entity with a unique set of descriptive demand and forecast data that is used as the basis to forecast demand. You create forecast items for a wide range of uses, but they ultimately represent things that you buy, sell, or use in your organization and for which you require a predictable usage.
<b>fund</b>	In PeopleSoft Promotions Management, a budget that can be used to fund promotional activity. There are four funding methods: top down, fixed accrual, rolling accrual, and zero-based accrual.
<b>generic process type</b>	In PeopleSoft Process Scheduler, process types are identified by a generic process type. For example, the generic process type SQR includes all SQR process types, such as SQR process and SQR report.
<b>group</b>	In PeopleSoft Billing and Receivables, a posting entity that comprises one or more transactions (items, deposits, payments, transfers, matches, or write-offs).
	In PeopleSoft Human Resources Management and Supply Chain Management, any set of records that are associated under a single name or variable to run calculations in PeopleSoft business processes. In PeopleSoft Time and Labor, for example, employees are placed in groups for time reporting purposes.
<b>incentive object</b>	In PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management, the incentive-related objects that define and support the PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management calculation process and results, such as plan templates, plans, results data, user interaction objects, and so on.
<b>incentive rule</b>	In PeopleSoft Sales Incentive Management, the commands that act on transactions and turn them into compensation. A rule is one part in the process of turning a transaction into compensation.
<b>incur</b>	In PeopleSoft Promotions Management, to become liable for a promotional payment. In other words, you owe that amount to a customer for promotional activities.
<b>item</b>	In PeopleSoft Inventory, a tangible commodity that is stored in a business unit (shipped from a warehouse).
	In PeopleSoft Demand Planning, Inventory Policy Planning, and Supply Planning, a noninventory item that is designated as being used for planning purposes only. It can represent a family or group of inventory items. It can have a planning bill of material (BOM) or planning routing, and it can exist as a component on a planning BOM. A planning item cannot be specified on a production or engineering BOM or routing, and it cannot be used as a component in a production. The quantity on hand will never be maintained.
	In PeopleSoft Receivables, an individual receivable. An item can be an invoice, a credit memo, a debit memo, a write-off, or an adjustment.
<b>KPI</b>	An abbreviation for <i>key performance indicator</i> . A high-level measurement of how well an organization is doing in achieving critical success factors. This defines the data value or calculation upon which an assessment is determined.

<b>LDIF file</b>	Abbreviation for <i>Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) Data Interchange Format file</i> . Contains discrepancies between PeopleSoft data and directory data.
<b>learner group</b>	In PeopleSoft Enterprise Learning Management, a group of learners who are linked to the same learning environment. Members of the learner group can share the same attributes, such as the same department or job code. Learner groups are used to control access to and enrollment in learning activities and programs. They are also used to perform group enrollments and mass enrollments in the back office.
<b>learning components</b>	In PeopleSoft Enterprise Learning Management, the foundational building blocks of learning activities. PeopleSoft Enterprise Learning Management supports six basic types of learning components: web-based, session, webcast, test, survey, and assignment. One or more of these learning component types compose a single learning activity.
<b>learning environment</b>	In PeopleSoft Enterprise Learning Management, identifies a set of categories and catalog items that can be made available to learner groups. Also defines the default values that are assigned to the learning activities and programs that are created within a particular learning environment. Learning environments provide a way to partition the catalog so that learners see only those items that are relevant to them.
<b>learning history</b>	In PeopleSoft Enterprise Learning Management, a self-service repository for all of a learner's completed learning activities and programs.
<b>ledger mapping</b>	You use ledger mapping to relate expense data from general ledger accounts to resource objects. Multiple ledger line items can be mapped to one or more resource IDs. You can also use ledger mapping to map dollar amounts (referred to as <i>rates</i> ) to business units. You can map the amounts in two different ways: an actual amount that represents actual costs of the accounting period, or a budgeted amount that can be used to calculate the capacity rates as well as budgeted model results. In PeopleSoft Enterprise Warehouse, you can map general ledger accounts to the EW Ledger table.
<b>library section</b>	In PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management, a section that is defined in a plan (or template) and that is available for other plans to share. Changes to a library section are reflected in all plans that use it.
<b>linked section</b>	In PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management, a section that is defined in a plan template but appears in a plan. Changes to linked sections propagate to plans using that section.
<b>linked variable</b>	In PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management, a variable that is defined and maintained in a plan template and that also appears in a plan. Changes to linked variables propagate to plans using that variable.
<b>load</b>	In PeopleSoft Inventory, identifies a group of goods that are shipped together. Load management is a feature of PeopleSoft Inventory that is used to track the weight, the volume, and the destination of a shipment.
<b>local functionality</b>	In PeopleSoft HRMS, the set of information that is available for a specific country. You can access this information when you click the appropriate country flag in the global window, or when you access it by a local country menu.
<b>location</b>	Locations enable you to indicate the different types of addresses—for a company, for example, one address to receive bills, another for shipping, a third for postal deliveries, and a separate street address. Each address has a different location number. The primary location—indicated by a <i>1</i> —is the address you use most often and may be different from the main address.
<b>logistical task</b>	In PeopleSoft Services Procurement, an administrative task that is related to hiring a service provider. Logistical tasks are linked to the service type on the work order so that different types of services can have different logistical tasks. Logistical tasks include both preapproval tasks (such as assigning a new badge or ordering a new

laptop) and postapproval tasks (such as scheduling orientation or setting up the service provider email). The logistical tasks can be mandatory or optional. Mandatory preapproval tasks must be completed before the work order is approved. Mandatory postapproval tasks, on the other hand, must be completed before a work order is released to a service provider.

**market template**

In PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management, additional functionality that is specific to a given market or industry and is built on top of a product category.

**match group**

In PeopleSoft Receivables, a group of receivables items and matching offset items. The system creates match groups by using user-defined matching criteria for selected field values.

**MCF server**

Abbreviation for *PeopleSoft MultiChannel Framework server*. Comprises the universal queue server and the MCF log server. Both processes are started when *MCF Servers* is selected in an application server domain configuration.

**merchandising activity**

In PeopleSoft Promotions Management, a specific discount type that is associated with a trade promotion (such as off-invoice, billback or rebate, or lump-sum payment) that defines the performance that is required to receive the discount. In the industry, you may know this as an offer, a discount, a merchandising event, an event, or a tactic.

**meta-SQL**

Meta-SQL constructs expand into platform-specific Structured Query Language (SQL) substrings. They are used in functions that pass SQL strings, such as in SQL objects, the SQLExec function, and PeopleSoft Application Engine programs.

**metastring**

Metastrings are special expressions included in SQL string literals. The metastrings, prefixed with a percent (%) symbol, are included directly in the string literals. They expand at run time into an appropriate substring for the current database platform.

**multibook**

In PeopleSoft General Ledger, multiple ledgers having multiple-base currencies that are defined for a business unit, with the option to post a single transaction to all base currencies (all ledgers) or to only one of those base currencies (ledgers).

**multicurrency**

The ability to process transactions in a currency other than the business unit's base currency.

**national allowance**

In PeopleSoft Promotions Management, a promotion at the corporate level that is funded by nondiscretionary dollars. In the industry, you may know this as a national promotion, a corporate promotion, or a corporate discount.

**node-oriented tree**

A tree that is based on a detail structure, but the detail values are not used.

**pagelet**

Each block of content on the home page is called a pagelet. These pagelets display summary information within a small rectangular area on the page. The pagelet provide users with a snapshot of their most relevant PeopleSoft and non-PeopleSoft content.

**participant**

In PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management, participants are recipients of the incentive compensation calculation process.

**participant object**

Each participant object may be related to one or more compensation objects.

See also *compensation object*.

**partner**

A company that supplies products or services that are resold or purchased by the enterprise.

**pay cycle**

In PeopleSoft Payables, a set of rules that define the criteria by which it should select scheduled payments for payment creation.

**pending item**

In PeopleSoft Receivables, an individual receivable (such as an invoice, a credit memo, or a write-off) that has been entered in or created by the system, but hasn't been posted.

<b>PeopleCode</b>	PeopleCode is a proprietary language, executed by the PeopleSoft application processor. PeopleCode generates results based upon existing data or user actions. By using business interlink objects, external services are available to all PeopleSoft applications wherever PeopleCode can be executed.
<b>PeopleCode event</b>	An action that a user takes upon an object, usually a record field, that is referenced within a PeopleSoft page.
<b>PeopleSoft Internet Architecture</b>	The fundamental architecture on which PeopleSoft 8 applications are constructed, consisting of a relational database management system (RDBMS), an application server, a web server, and a browser.
<b>performance measurement</b>	In PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management, a variable used to store data (similar to an aggregator, but without a predefined formula) within the scope of an incentive plan. Performance measures are associated with a plan calendar, territory, and participant. Performance measurements are used for quota calculation and reporting.
<b>period context</b>	In PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management, because a participant typically uses the same compensation plan for multiple periods, the period context associates a plan context with a specific calendar period and fiscal year. The period context references the associated plan context, thus forming a chain. Each plan context has a corresponding set of period contexts.
<b>plan</b>	In PeopleSoft Sales Incentive Management, a collection of allocation rules, variables, steps, sections, and incentive rules that instruct the PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management engine in how to process transactions.
<b>plan context</b>	In PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management, correlates a participant with the compensation plan and node to which the participant is assigned, enabling the PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management system to find anything that is associated with the node and that is required to perform compensation processing. Each participant, node, and plan combination represents a unique plan context—if three participants are on a compensation structure, each has a different plan context. Configuration plans are identified by plan contexts and are associated with the participants that refer to them.
<b>plan template</b>	In PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management, the base from which a plan is created. A plan template contains common sections and variables that are inherited by all plans that are created from the template. A template may contain steps and sections that are not visible in the plan definition.
<b>planned learning</b>	In PeopleSoft Enterprise Learning Management, a self-service repository for all of a learner's planned learning activities and programs.
<b>planning instance</b>	In PeopleSoft Supply Planning, a set of data (business units, items, supplies, and demands) constituting the inputs and outputs of a supply plan.
<b>portal registry</b>	In PeopleSoft applications, the portal registry is a tree-like structure in which content references are organized, classified, and registered. It is a central repository that defines both the structure and content of a portal through a hierarchical, tree-like structure of folders useful for organizing and securing content references.
<b>price list</b>	In PeopleSoft Enterprise Pricer, enables you to select products and conditions for which the price list applies to a transaction. During a transaction, the system either determines the product price based on the predefined search hierarchy for the transaction or uses the product's lowest price on any associated, active price lists. This price is used as the basis for any further discounts and surcharges.
<b>price rule</b>	In PeopleSoft Enterprise Pricer, defines the conditions that must be met for adjustments to be applied to the base price. Multiple rules can apply when conditions of each rule are met.

<b>price rule condition</b>	In PeopleSoft Enterprise Pricer, selects the price-by fields, the values for the price-by fields, and the operator that determines how the price-by fields are related to the transaction.
<b>price rule key</b>	In PeopleSoft Enterprise Pricer, defines the fields that are available to define price rule conditions (which are used to match a transaction) on the price rule.
<b>process category</b>	In PeopleSoft Process Scheduler, processes that are grouped for server load balancing and prioritization.
<b>process group</b>	In PeopleSoft Financials, a group of application processes (performed in a defined order) that users can initiate in real time, directly from a transaction entry page.
<b>process definition</b>	Process definitions define each run request.
<b>process instance</b>	A unique number that identifies each process request. This value is automatically incremented and assigned to each requested process when the process is submitted to run.
<b>process job</b>	You can link process definitions into a job request and process each request serially or in parallel. You can also initiate subsequent processes based on the return code from each prior request.
<b>process request</b>	A single run request, such as a Structured Query Report (SQR), a COBOL or Application Engine program, or a Crystal report that you run through PeopleSoft Process Scheduler.
<b>process run control</b>	A PeopleTools variable used to retain PeopleSoft Process Scheduler values needed at runtime for all requests that reference a run control ID. Do not confuse these with application run controls, which may be defined with the same run control ID, but only contain information specific to a given application process request.
<b>product category</b>	In PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management, indicates an application in the Enterprise Incentive Management suite of products. Each transaction in the PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management system is associated with a product category.
<b>programs</b>	In PeopleSoft Enterprise Learning Management, a high-level grouping that guides the learner along a specific learning path through sections of catalog items. PeopleSoft Enterprise Learning Systems provides two types of programs—curricula and certifications.
<b>progress log</b>	In PeopleSoft Services Procurement, tracks deliverable-based projects. This is similar to the time sheet in function and process. The service provider contact uses the progress log to record and submit progress on deliverables. The progress can be logged by the activity that is performed, by the percentage of work that is completed, or by the completion of milestone activities that are defined for the project.
<b>project transaction</b>	In PeopleSoft Project Costing, an individual transaction line that represents a cost, time, budget, or other transaction row.
<b>promotion</b>	In PeopleSoft Promotions Management, a trade promotion, which is typically funded from trade dollars and used by consumer products manufacturers to increase sales volume.
<b>publishing</b>	In PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management, a stage in processing that makes incentive-related results available to participants.
<b>record group</b>	A set of logically and functionally related control tables and views. Record groups help enable TableSet sharing, which eliminates redundant data entry. Record groups ensure that TableSet sharing is applied consistently across all related tables and views.
<b>record input VAT flag</b>	Abbreviation for <i>record input value-added tax flag</i> . Within PeopleSoft Purchasing, Payables, and General Ledger, this flag indicates that you are recording input VAT

<b>record output VAT flag</b>	on the transaction. This flag, in conjunction with the record output VAT flag, is used to determine the accounting entries created for a transaction and to determine how a transaction is reported on the VAT return. For all cases within Purchasing and Payables where VAT information is tracked on a transaction, this flag is set to Yes. This flag is not used in PeopleSoft Order Management, Billing, or Receivables, where it is assumed that you are always recording only output VAT, or in PeopleSoft Expenses, where it is assumed that you are always recording only input VAT.
<b>reference data</b>	Abbreviation for <i>record output value-added tax flag</i> .
<b>reference object</b>	See <i>record input VAT flag</i> .
<b>reference transaction</b>	In PeopleSoft Sales Incentive Management, system objects that represent the sales organization, such as territories, participants, products, customers, channels, and so on.
<b>relationship object</b>	In PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management, this dimension-type object further defines the business. Reference objects can have their own hierarchy (for example, product tree, customer tree, industry tree, and geography tree).
<b>regional sourcing</b>	In commitment control, a reference transaction is a source transaction that is referenced by a higher-level (and usually later) source transaction, in order to automatically reverse all or part of the referenced transaction's budget-checked amount. This avoids duplicate postings during the sequential entry of the transaction at different commitment levels. For example, the amount of an encumbrance transaction (such as a purchase order) will, when checked and recorded against a budget, cause the system to concurrently reference and relieve all or part of the amount of a corresponding pre-encumbrance transaction, such as a purchase requisition.
<b>remote data source data</b>	In PeopleSoft Purchasing, provides the infrastructure to maintain, display, and select an appropriate vendor and vendor pricing structure that is based on a regional sourcing model where the multiple ship to locations are grouped. Sourcing may occur at a level higher than the ship to location.
<b>REN server</b>	In PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management, these objects further define a compensation structure to resolve transactions by establishing associations between compensation objects and business objects.
<b>requester</b>	Data that is extracted from a separate database and migrated into the local database.
<b>role</b>	Abbreviation for <i>real-time event notification server</i> in PeopleSoft MultiChannel Framework.
<b>role user</b>	In PeopleSoft eSettlements, an individual who requests goods or services and whose ID appears on the various procurement pages that reference purchase orders.
<b>roll up</b>	Describes how people fit into PeopleSoft Workflow. A role is a class of users who perform the same type of work, such as clerks or managers. Your business rules typically specify what user role needs to do an activity.
<b>run control</b>	A PeopleSoft Workflow user. A person's role user ID serves much the same purpose as a user ID does in other parts of the system. PeopleSoft Workflow uses role user IDs to determine how to route worklist items to users (through an email address, for example) and to track the roles that users play in the workflow. Role users do not need PeopleSoft user IDs.
<b>run control ID</b>	In a tree, to roll up is to total sums based on the information hierarchy.
	A run control is a type of online page that is used to begin a process, such as the batch processing of a payroll run. Run control pages generally start a program that manipulates data.
	A unique ID to associate each user with his or her own run control table entries.

<b>run-level context</b>	In PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management, associates a particular run (and batch ID) with a period context and plan context. Every plan context that participates in a run has a separate run-level context. Because a run cannot span periods, only one run-level context is associated with each plan context.
<b>search query</b>	You use this set of objects to pass a query string and operators to the search engine. The search index returns a set of matching results with keys to the source documents.
<b>section</b>	In PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management, a collection of incentive rules that operate on transactions of a specific type. Sections enable plans to be segmented to process logical events in different sections.
<b>security event</b>	In commitment control, security events trigger security authorization checking, such as budget entries, transfers, and adjustments; exception overrides and notifications; and inquiries.
<b>serial genealogy</b>	In PeopleSoft Manufacturing, the ability to track the composition of a specific, serial-controlled item.
<b>serial in production</b>	In PeopleSoft Manufacturing, enables the tracing of serial information for manufactured items. This is maintained in the Item Master record.
<b>session</b>	In PeopleSoft Enterprise Learning Management, a single meeting day of an activity (that is, the period of time between start and finish times within a day). The session stores the specific date, location, meeting time, and instructor. Sessions are used for scheduled training.
<b>session template</b>	In PeopleSoft Enterprise Learning Management, enables you to set up common activity characteristics that may be reused while scheduling a PeopleSoft Enterprise Learning Management activity—characteristics such as days of the week, start and end times, facility and room assignments, instructors, and equipment. A session pattern template can be attached to an activity that is being scheduled. Attaching a template to an activity causes all of the default template information to populate the activity session pattern.
<b>setup relationship</b>	In PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management, a relationship object type that associates a configuration plan with any structure node.
<b>share driver expression</b>	In PeopleSoft Business Planning, a named planning method similar to a driver expression, but which you can set up globally for shared use within a single planning application or to be shared between multiple planning applications through PeopleSoft Enterprise Warehouse.
<b>single signon</b>	With single signon, users can, after being authenticated by a PeopleSoft application server, access a second PeopleSoft application server without entering a user ID or password.
<b>source transaction</b>	In commitment control, any transaction generated in a PeopleSoft or third-party application that is integrated with commitment control and which can be checked against commitment control budgets. For example, a pre-encumbrance, encumbrance, expenditure, recognized revenue, or collected revenue transaction.
<b>SpeedChart</b>	A user-defined shorthand key that designates several ChartKeys to be used for voucher entry. Percentages can optionally be related to each ChartKey in a SpeedChart definition.
<b>SpeedType</b>	A code representing a combination of ChartField values. SpeedTypes simplify the entry of ChartFields commonly used together.
<b>staging</b>	A method of consolidating selected partner offerings with the offerings from the enterprise's other partners.

<b>statutory account</b>	Account required by a regulatory authority for recording and reporting financial results. In PeopleSoft, this is equivalent to the Alternate Account (ALTACCT) ChartField.
<b>step</b>	In PeopleSoft Sales Incentive Management, a collection of sections in a plan. Each step corresponds to a step in the job run.
<b>storage level</b>	In PeopleSoft Inventory, identifies the level of a material storage location. Material storage locations are made up of a business unit, a storage area, and a storage level. You can set up to four storage levels.
<b>subcustomer qualifier</b>	A value that groups customers into a division for which you can generate detailed history, aging, events, and profiles.
<b>Summary ChartField</b>	You use summary ChartFields to create summary ledgers that roll up detail amounts based on specific detail values or on selected tree nodes. When detail values are summarized using tree nodes, summary ChartFields must be used in the summary ledger data record to accommodate the maximum length of a node name (20 characters).
<b>summary ledger</b>	An accounting feature used primarily in allocations, inquiries, and PS/nVision reporting to store combined account balances from detail ledgers. Summary ledgers increase speed and efficiency of reporting by eliminating the need to summarize detail ledger balances each time a report is requested. Instead, detail balances are summarized in a background process according to user-specified criteria and stored on summary ledgers. The summary ledgers are then accessed directly for reporting.
<b>summary time period</b>	In PeopleSoft Business Planning, any time period (other than a base time period) that is an aggregate of other time periods, including other summary time periods and base time periods, such as quarter and year total.
<b>summary tree</b>	A tree used to roll up accounts for each type of report in summary ledgers. Summary trees enable you to define trees on trees. In a summary tree, the detail values are really nodes on a detail tree or another summary tree (known as the <i>basis</i> tree). A summary tree structure specifies the details on which the summary trees are to be built.
<b>syndicate</b>	To distribute a production version of the enterprise catalog to partners.
<b>system function</b>	In PeopleSoft Receivables, an activity that defines how the system generates accounting entries for the general ledger.
<b>TableSet</b>	A means of sharing similar sets of values in control tables, where the actual data values are different but the structure of the tables is the same.
<b>TableSet sharing</b>	Shared data that is stored in many tables that are based on the same TableSets. Tables that use TableSet sharing contain the SETID field as an additional key or unique identifier.
<b>target currency</b>	The value of the entry currency or currencies converted to a single currency for budget viewing and inquiry purposes.
<b>template</b>	A template is HTML code associated with a web page. It defines the layout of the page and also where to get HTML for each part of the page. In PeopleSoft, you use templates to build a page by combining HTML from a number of sources. For a PeopleSoft portal, all templates must be registered in the portal registry, and each content reference must be assigned a template.
<b>territory</b>	In PeopleSoft Sales Incentive Management, hierarchical relationships of business objects, including regions, products, customers, industries, and participants.
<b>TimeSpan</b>	A relative period, such as year-to-date or current period, that can be used in various PeopleSoft General Ledger functions and reports when a rolling time frame, rather

	than a specific date, is required. TimeSpans can also be used with flexible formulas in PeopleSoft Projects.
<b>trace usage</b>	In PeopleSoft Manufacturing, enables the control of which components will be traced during the manufacturing process. Serial- and lot-controlled components can be traced. This is maintained in the Item Master record.
<b>transaction allocation</b>	In PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management, the process of identifying the owner of a transaction. When a raw transaction from a batch is allocated to a plan context, the transaction is duplicated in the PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management transaction tables.
<b>transaction state</b>	In PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management, a value assigned by an incentive rule to a transaction. Transaction states enable sections to process only transactions that are at a specific stage in system processing. After being successfully processed, transactions may be promoted to the next transaction state and “picked up” by a different section for further processing.
<b>Translate table</b>	A system edit table that stores codes and translate values for the miscellaneous fields in the database that do not warrant individual edit tables of their own.
<b>tree</b>	The graphical hierarchy in PeopleSoft systems that displays the relationship between all accounting units (for example, corporate divisions, projects, reporting groups, account numbers) and determines roll-up hierarchies.
<b>unclaimed transaction</b>	In PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management, a transaction that is not claimed by a node or participant after the allocation process has completed, usually due to missing or incomplete data. Unclaimed transactions may be manually assigned to the appropriate node or participant by a compensation administrator.
<b>universal navigation header</b>	Every PeopleSoft portal includes the universal navigation header, intended to appear at the top of every page as long as the user is signed on to the portal. In addition to providing access to the standard navigation buttons (like Home, Favorites, and signoff) the universal navigation header can also display a welcome message for each user.
<b>user interaction object</b>	In PeopleSoft Sales Incentive Management, used to define the reporting components and reports that a participant can access in his or her context. All Sales Incentive Management user interface objects and reports are registered as user interaction objects. User interaction objects can be linked to a compensation structure node through a compensation relationship object (individually or as groups).
<b>variable</b>	In PeopleSoft Sales Incentive Management, the intermediate results of calculations. Variables hold the calculation results and are then inputs to other calculations. Variables can be plan variables that persist beyond the run of an engine or local variables that exist only during the processing of a section.
<b>VAT exception</b>	Abbreviation for <i>value-added tax exception</i> . A temporary or permanent exemption from paying VAT that is granted to an organization. This terms refers to both VAT exoneration and VAT suspension.
<b>VAT exempt</b>	Abbreviation for <i>value-added tax exempt</i> . Describes goods and services that are not subject to VAT. Organizations that supply exempt goods or services are unable to recover the related input VAT. This is also referred to as exempt without recovery.
<b>VAT exoneration</b>	Abbreviation for <i>value-added tax exoneration</i> . An organization that has been granted a permanent exemption from paying VAT due to the nature of that organization.
<b>VAT suspension</b>	Abbreviation for <i>value-added tax suspension</i> . An organization that has been granted a temporary exemption from paying VAT.
<b>warehouse</b>	A PeopleSoft data warehouse that consists of predefined ETL maps, data warehouse tools, and DataMart definitions.

<b>work order</b>	In PeopleSoft Services Procurement, enables an enterprise to create resource-based and deliverable-based transactions that specify the basic terms and conditions for hiring a specific service provider. When a service provider is hired, the service provider logs time or progress against the work order.
<b>worksheet</b>	A way of presenting data through a PeopleSoft Business Analysis Modeler interface that enables users to do in-depth analysis using pivoting tables, charts, notes, and history information.
<b>worklist</b>	The automated to-do list that PeopleSoft Workflow creates. From the worklist, you can directly access the pages you need to perform the next action, and then return to the worklist for another item.
<b>XML schema</b>	An XML definition that standardizes the representation of application messages, component interfaces, or business interlinks.
<b>yield by operation</b>	In PeopleSoft Manufacturing, the ability to plan the loss of a manufactured item on an operation-by-operation basis.
<b>zero-rated VAT</b>	Abbreviation for <i>zero-rated value-added tax</i> . A VAT transaction with a VAT code that has a tax percent of zero. Used to track taxable VAT activity where no actual VAT amount is charged. Organizations that supply zero-rated goods and services can still recover the related input VAT. This is also referred to as exempt with recovery.



# Index

## Numerics/Symbols

822 bank statements 23

## A

account analysis 23  
  entering statement information 33  
  importing bank statements 36  
  performing 31  
  validating 36  
Account Analysis Manager page 36  
Account Analysis Validation page 36  
accounting  
  Interunit and Intraunit entries  
  generation 156  
  Interunit and Intraunit processing 155  
  IU Anchor (interunit anchor) 161  
  managing 153  
  reviewing information 172  
  specifying calculation type 159  
  specifying review settings on  
    template 158  
  understanding 153  
  viewing the accounting summary 172  
accounting entries  
  adjusting 166  
  creating ad-hoc entries 170  
  line source 169  
  managing 165  
  processing 164  
    Update Accounting function 166  
Accounting Entries page 166, 170  
accounting entry status, maintaining 172  
accounting event types 153  
accounting events 153  
Accounting Events page 133  
Accounting Summary page 172  
accounting template  
  defining substitution criteria 162  
  linking to accounting events 163  
accounting templates 153  
  creating 157  
  entering general information 157  
Accounting Templates - Substitution Rule  
  page 162

Accounting Templates - Template  
  page 157  
Accounting Templates component  
  (ACCTG\_TEMPLATES) 157  
accounting templates, setting up 7  
ACCTG\_TEMPLATES component 157  
Ad-Hoc Position Worksheet page 65  
Add Multiple Customers page 87  
Add Multiple Items page 97  
Add Multiple Vendors page 86  
additional documentation xiv  
Adjust Netting - Manual Adjustment  
  page 98  
Adjust Netting - Payables page 100  
Adjust Netting - Receivables page 101  
Adjust Netting - Settlement Instructions  
  page 100  
Administer Netting page 107  
analyzing bank fees 23  
analyzing fee structures 31  
application fundamentals xiii  
Approve Netting page 104  
Approve Transfer Templates page 120  
approving changes to transfer  
  templates 120  
approving settlements 143  
Association for Financial Professionals  
  (AFP) 23  
Automated Accounting page, processing  
  VAT 192  
Automated Accounting process  
  (TR\_ACCTG) 164  
  processing 165  
  understanding 164  
Automatic Netting Selection page 91  
Automatic Netting Selection process  
  (TR\_NET\_ASEL) 91  
Automatic Reconciliation Exceptions  
  page 191

## B

bank fee analysis 30  
bank information, setting up 7  
bank statements  
  analyzing 31

- automatically importing 36
- validating 31
- Bank Transfer Chartfields page 132
- Bank Transfer page 130
- bank transfers 109
  - accounting events 133
  - associated ChartFields 132
  - generating 130
  - prerequisites 129
  - processing 128
  - using electronic settlements 133
- bilateral netting 79
  - adding customers 87
  - adding multiple items 97
  - adding multiple vouchers 96
  - adding vendors 86
  - adjusting nets 97–98
  - adjusting receivables 101
  - adjusting settlement instructions 100
  - adjusting vouchers 100
  - administering 104
  - approving 104
  - automatically selecting nets 91
  - canceling 105
  - closing 106
  - creating nets manually 92
  - defining netting rules with SQL statements 88
  - defining participants 85
  - entering contract settlement information 89
  - entering primary contract information 88
  - generating automatic selection 91
  - inquiring on netting information 107
  - manual selection 93
  - prerequisites 81
  - setting up 82
  - setting up payables leg 95
  - setting up receivables leg 96
  - settlement instructions 94
  - understanding 79
- BUS\_UNIT\_OPT\_TR component 9
- Business Calendar page 8
- business calendars, setting up 8
- business process pages 20
- business unit options, setting up 9
- calendars, defining 8
- Cancel Netting page 105
- Cash Flow Settlements process (RUN\_TRC1014) 150
- Cash Flow Settlements report (RUN\_TRC1014) 150
- Cash Management
  - business processes 1
  - defining processing options 7
  - getting started 1
  - implementing application tables 2
  - PeopleSoft application integration 1
- Cash Management Dispatch Settlements process 136
- Cash Management reports 205
  - See Also* See reports, Cash Management
  - cash positions
    - calculate position time span 60
    - copying data forward 77
    - copying worksheets 69
    - creating forecasting rules 68
    - creating position SQL 58
    - creating position trees 51
    - defining additional search criteria 77
    - defining node properties 55
    - defining position field types 46
    - defining position limits 56
    - defining position sources 50
    - defining position time spans 58
    - defining SQL selection criteria 55
    - defining tree nodes 53
    - entering additional manual entry information 77
    - entering manual position entry information 76
    - entering position tree source information 52
    - exporting worksheet 70
    - generating position worksheets 62
    - generating reports 77
    - managing position worksheets 61
    - manually creating worksheets 74
    - scheduling Position Manager 70
    - scheduling position tree SQL 58
    - setting up 42
    - specifying tree wide options 52
    - understanding trees and positions 41
    - viewing transaction details 68
  - cash positions, defining 41

**C**

- Calculate Interest Accruals page 198

CHIPS Participant ID, defining for EFTs 126  
 CHIPS Participant ID, defining for transfers 117  
 CHIPS Universal ID, defining for transfers 117, 126  
 closing nets  
   in Receivables 106  
   TR\_NET\_ARCLS process 107  
   TR\_NET\_CLOSE process 107  
   with Pay Cycle Manager 106  
 comments, submitting xvii  
 common elements xvii  
 comparing fee structures 31  
 Consolidated Publications Incorporated (CPI) xiv  
 contact information xvii  
 Copy/Apply Forecasting Rules page 69  
 country-specific documentation xvi  
 Create Position SQL page 58  
 creating fee entries 37  
 cross-references xvi  
 Currency Code - Holiday List ID Cross Reference page 12  
 Currency Code and Holiday List ID, defining 12  
 Customer Connection web site xiv

**D**

deal settlement netting 151  
 deals transfers, processing 133  
 Define Time Buckets component (POS\_TIME\_SPAN\_PNL) 42  
 Define Time Buckets component (POS\_TIME\_SPAN\_PNL) 42  
 Define Time Buckets page 58  
 DEFINE\_FEE\_CODE component 25  
 defining prerequisite processing options 7  
 Dispatch Settlements (PMT\_DISPATCH)  
   Application Engine process 136  
 dispatching settlements 145  
 documentation  
   country-specific xvi  
   printed xiv  
   related xiv  
   updates xiv

**E**

editing nets 97

general information 98  
 receivables information 101  
 settlement instructions 100  
 voucher information 100  
 EFT Request - Addenda page 127  
 EFT Request - Beneficiary Address page 127  
 EFT Request - Destination page 125  
 EFT Request - Detailed Description page 127  
 EFT Request - Origin page 123  
 EFT requests 120  
   creating fee entries 128  
   defining fee codes 128  
   defining requests fee codes 128  
 electronic funds transfer templates, defining 12  
 electronic funds transfers 109  
   beneficiary address 127  
   creating 120  
   creating fee entries 128  
   destination information 125  
   EFT handling options 118, 127  
   intermediary bank routings 118, 127  
   internal notes 118, 127  
   managing templates 112  
   origin information 123  
   prerequisites 111  
   selecting transfer type 121  
   transfer addenda 118, 127  
   understanding 109  
 Enter Fee Statements - Balance Adjustments page 34  
 Enter Fee Statements - Balance Compensation Information page 34  
 Enter Fee Statements - Information page 34  
 Enter Fee Statements - Rates page 34  
 Enter Fee Statements - Service Adjustments page 35  
 Enter Fee Statements - Service Charges page 35  
 Enter Fees page 38  
 Enter Manual Position page 76  
 Enter Manual Selection - Add Multiple Vouchers page 96  
 Enter Transfer Templates - Beneficiary Address page 118  
 Enter Transfer Templates - Destination page 115

Enter Transfer Templates - Origin page 114  
 Enter Transfer Templates - Template Field Security page 118  
 Enter Transfer Templates component (TR\_WIRE\_TEMPLATES) 112  
 entering miscellaneous fees 38  
 Enterprise Integration Point messages Payment Dispatch (PMT\_DISPATCH) 136  
 external bank transfers 131  
 external transactions and VAT 181  
 external transactions fee entries 39

**F**

facilities, defining 13  
 Federal Wire ID code, defining 124  
 fee activity, reviewing 36  
 Fee Calculation Type - Fee Structure page 30  
 Fee Code Definition page 26  
 Fee Codes component (DEFINE\_FEE\_CODE) 25  
 fee comparison 30

fee entries creating 37  
 creating external transactions 39  
 fee entry and VAT defining fee codes 190  
 entering fees 190  
 viewing VAT options 190  
 fee entry and VAT and VAT 189  
 fee metrics, defining 26  
 Fee Structure Comparison page 31  
 fee structures creating fee structure definitions 29  
 creating fee transaction tables 25  
 defining fee codes 26  
 defining fee structure accounts 28  
 editing base fee calculations 30  
 entering SQL where criteria 28  
 setting up 25

Fee Structures - Structure Accounts page 28  
 Fee Structures - Structure Definition page 29

Fee Transactions Table page 25  
 fees, defining 13 accounting treatment 27  
 amortized fees 27

expensed fees 27  
 Fee Analysis Metric SQL 26  
 fee type 26  
 modifying interest basis 27  
 VAT applicable fees 27  
 fiscal period closure procedure 175  
 row closure order 175  
 fiscal period closure, maintaining 173  
 Fiscal Period Summary page 174–175  
 force reconciling VAT-applicable transactions 190  
 Funds Transfer - Addenda page 118  
 Funds Transfer - Detailed Description page 118  
 funds transfer templates approving 112  
 creating 112  
 funds transfer, using DFI Qualifier 117, 126

**G**

generating reports 205  
 glossary 209

**I**

IBAN creating for EFTs 127  
 creating for funds transfers 117  
 IHB Interest Accruals process (TR\_TRINTACU) 198  
 In-House Bank Statement report 199  
 in-house banking calculating interest accruals 197  
 generating In-House Bank Statement report 199  
 generating schedules 198  
 interest accrual process limitations 199  
 performing 197  
 prerequisites 197  
 viewing internal account activity 197  
 interest accrual process, system limitations 199  
 interest accrual schedules, generating 198  
 internal accounts, defining 13  
 internal bank transfers restrictions 132  
 IU Anchor (interunit anchor) for accounting 161

**M**

managing bilateral netting 79  
 managing fees 36  
 managing netting relationships 104  
 manual position entry 74  
 Manual Position Entry page  
   Additional Information page 77  
   Additional Search Criteria page 77  
   Copy Data Forward page 77  
 Manual Select Netting - Manual Selection page 93  
 Manual Select Netting - Payables page 95  
 Manual Select Netting - Receivables page 96  
 Manual Select Netting - Settlement Instructions page 94  
 manually creating accounting entries 170  
 manually creating bilateral nets 92  
   adding multiple items 97  
   adding multiple vouchers 96  
   payables leg 95  
   primary information 93  
   receivables leg 96  
   settlement instructions 94  
 manually creating statements 33  
   entering balance adjustments 34  
   entering compensation balances 34  
   entering general information 34  
   entering rates 34  
   entering service adjustments 35  
   entering service charges 35  
 market rates  
   defining 14  
   defining market/exchange code information 14  
   defining rates reset codes 17  
   editing market rates 16  
   editing rate variance 16  
 Market Rates - Market Rates page 16  
 Market Rates page 14  
 market rates, defining 13  
 market/exchange code, defining 14  
 menu navigation 19

**N**

navigating Treasury Management 19  
 navigating tree nodes on Position Manager Results page 67  
 navigation centers

Treasury Management Center 19  
 Treasury Management Setup Center 21  
 Treasury Processing Center 20  
 Net Deal Settlements page 151  
 NET\_CONTRACT component 82  
 NET\_EXCL\_PARM component 82  
 NET\_NETTING\_RULES component 83  
 NET\_PARTICIPANT component 83  
 netting administration 104  
   approving 104  
   canceling 105  
 netting cashflow transactions 135  
 Netting Closing processes 107  
 Netting Contracts - Primary Information page 88  
 Netting Contracts - Settlement Information page 89  
 Netting Contracts component (NET\_CONTRACT) 82  
 Netting Contracts page 107  
 netting deal transaction cashflows 151  
 netting deal transaction cashflows, selecting cash flow information 152  
 Netting Exclusion Parameters component (NET\_EXCL\_PARM) 82  
 Netting Inquiry page 107  
 Netting Participants component (NET\_PARTICIPANT) 83  
 Netting Participants page 85  
 Netting Rules component (NET\_NETTING\_RULES) 83  
 Netting Rules page 88  
 netting, defining 17  
 Node Definition page 53  
 Node Properties - Selection Criteria page 55  
 Node Properties page 55  
 notes xvi

**P**

page navigation 19  
 Payment Dispatch (PMT\_DISPATCH) EIP message 136  
   features and functionality 136  
   integration with file transformation programs 136  
 Payment Dispatch Settlements process 136  
   *See Also* Cash Management Dispatch Settlements process

Payment File Data page 149  
 Payment File Events page 149  
 payment files  
     reviewing file transmittal data 149  
     reviewing file transmittal status 147  
     reviewing import file status 147  
     reviewing system event log for  
         statements 149  
     security considerations 147  
 payment files, determining transmittal  
     status 147  
 PeopleBooks  
     ordering xiv  
 PeopleCode, typographical  
     conventions xv  
 PeopleSoft application fundamentals xiii  
 POS\_FIELD\_TYPE\_PNL component 42  
 POS\_FORECAST\_RULES  
     component 61  
 POS\_SOURCE\_TBL component 42  
 POS\_TIME\_SPAN\_PNL component 42  
 position analysis, defining 17  
 Position by Source page 68  
 Position Field Types page 46  
 Position Forecasting Rules component  
     (POS\_FORECAST\_RULES) 61  
 Position Forecasting Rules page 68  
 Position Limits page 56  
 Position Manager  
     creating ad-hoc worksheet 65  
     viewing calculation results 66  
 Position Manager Options page 63  
 Position Manager options, defining 63  
 Position Manager page 62  
 Position Manager Results page 66  
 Position Report Periods page 70  
 Position Source Definition component  
     (POS\_SOURCE\_TBL) 42  
 Position Source Definition page 50  
 Position Tree Source page 52  
 position worksheets, managing 61  
 prerequisites xiii  
 printed documentation xiv  
 processing VAT accounting 191  
     *See Also* See also Automated Accounting

**R**

Rate Definition page 16  
 Rate Reset Code page 17  
 related documentation xiv

reports  
     cash position 77  
     description 205  
     FIN3003, Fees & Interest 205  
     TRC1000, Accounting Entries 205  
     TRC1004, Actual vs Projected Cash  
         Positions 205  
     TRC1008, Actual vs. Projected Cash  
         Positions by Currency 205  
     TRC1009, Actual vs. Projected Cash  
         Positions by Account 205  
     TRC1010, Settlement Instructions 205  
     TRC1014, Cash Flow Settlements 205  
     TRC3005, In-House Bank  
         Statement 199, 205  
     TRC4000, Netting Balance List 205  
     TRC4010, Netting Advice Balance  
         Summary 205  
     TRC4020, Netting Advice Balance  
         Detail 205  
     TRC4050, Fee Structures 205  
     TRC4060, Actual vs. Projected Cash  
         Position 205  
 Review Payment Files page 147  
 reviewing VAT accounting entries 192  
     *See Also* See also Accounting Entries  
     page  
 running Cash Flow Settlements report 150  
 running reports 205

**S**

Schedule Position Manager page 70  
 Schedule Position Time Spans page 60  
 Schedule Position Tree SQL page 58  
 Select Settlements page 140  
 selecting settlements 140  
 setting accounting review options 158  
 setting position limits 56  
 setting search preferences for Settlement  
     Manager page 150  
 setting security for funds transfer  
     templates 118  
 setting up bilateral nets 82  
 setting up Cash Management 1  
 setting up fee structures 25  
     *See Also* fee structures, setting up  
 setting up VAT 178  
     bank branch VAT default setup 181  
     bank VAT default setup 181  
     business unit VAT 180

Treasury accounting template VAT  
  defaults 181  
settlement approval  
  workflow 137  
Settlement Approval page 143  
settlement approval workflow 144  
Settlement Manager page 150  
Settlement Manager Preferences page 150  
Settlement Manager, using 149  
settlement selection  
  workflow 141  
settlement selection workflow 137  
settlements 135  
  approval methods 137  
  approving 143  
  determination of pay method 135  
  dispatching 145  
  managing from a central location 149  
  manually approving 143  
  netting deal cashflows 151  
Pay Cycle Manager 135  
prerequisites 138  
selecting 140  
selecting for outbound submission 140  
understanding 135  
viewing life-cycle information 142  
viewing settlement addenda  
  information 146  
setup pages 21  
soft-close, fiscal period 173  
SQL Where Criteria page 28  
suggestions, submitting xvii  
Swift ID, defining for EFTs 126  
Swift ID, defining for transfers 117  
System Transaction Definition 156

**T**

terms 209  
TR\_WIRE\_TEMPLATES  
  component 112  
transaction tables for fee codes 25  
Transfer Funds page 121  
transmit status, payment files 147  
Treasury Business Unit VAT page 180  
Treasury Management accounting process  
  flow 155  
Treasury Management Association (TMA)  
  Guide to Account Analysis and Service  
  Code 23  
Treasury Management Center 19

Treasury Management Setup Center 21  
Treasury Options component  
  (BUS\_UNIT\_OPT\_TR) 9  
Treasury Options page 9  
  accounting build options 10  
  accounting calendars 10  
  base currency revaluation 10  
  Deal Workflow options 9  
  entity codes 10  
  establishing VAT options 11  
  position update options 11  
  settlement approvals 10  
Treasury Payment Life-Cycle 142  
Treasury Processing Center 20  
Treasury VAT Information page 194  
Treasury VAT Processing page 182, 190  
Tree Manager page 51  
Tree Wide Options page 52  
trees and positions, setting up 42  
typographical conventions xv

**U**

understanding managing fees and account  
  analysis 23  
Update Accounting function 168

**V**

validating account analysis 36  
  *See Also* account analysis, validating  
VAT 177  
  accounting 191  
  adding VAT-applicable external  
  transactions 181  
Automatic Reconciliation Exceptions  
  page 191  
creating VAT through Automatic  
  Reconciliation 190  
creating VAT-applicable fees 189  
defining fee codes 190  
defining Treasury business unit  
  options 11  
editing external transaction details 182  
enabling VAT for a business unit 179  
entering fees 190  
final processing 196  
prerequisites 178  
processing accounting 192  
reviewing accounting entries 192  
setting up 178

Treasury VAT Information page 194  
understanding 177  
viewing VAT options for a fee entry 190  
VAT Default Setup page  
defining for bank 181  
defining for bank branch 181  
VAT Defaults page 181  
VAT options for business units,  
defining 11  
VAT Report Extract process  
(VAT1001) 196  
VAT Transaction Loader process  
(FS\_VATUPDFS) 196  
View/Approve Entries page 172  
visual cues xvi

**W**

warnings xvii  
workflow  
settlement approval 137, 144  
settlement selection 137, 141  
Virtual Approver for settlements 135

# PeopleSoft®

---

## PeopleSoft Cash Management 8.8 Reports

---

**December 2003**

## PeopleSoft Cash Management 8.8 Reports

SKU FSCM88TCM-R 1203

Copyright © 1992-2003 PeopleSoft, Inc. All rights reserved.

All material contained in this documentation is proprietary and confidential to PeopleSoft, Inc. ("PeopleSoft"), protected by copyright laws and subject to the nondisclosure provisions of the applicable PeopleSoft agreement. No part of this documentation may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, including, but not limited to, electronic, graphic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise without the prior written permission of PeopleSoft.

This documentation is subject to change without notice, and PeopleSoft does not warrant that the material contained in this documentation is free of errors. Any errors found in this document should be reported to PeopleSoft in writing.

The copyrighted software that accompanies this document is licensed for use only in strict accordance with the applicable license agreement which should be read carefully as it governs the terms of use of the software and this document, including the disclosure thereof.

PeopleSoft, PeopleTools, PS/nVision, PeopleCode, PeopleBooks, PeopleTalk, and Vantive are registered trademarks, and Pure Internet Architecture, Intelligent Context Manager, and The Real-Time Enterprise are trademarks of PeopleSoft, Inc. All other company and product names may be trademarks of their respective owners. The information contained herein is subject to change without notice.

### Open Source Disclosure

PeopleSoft takes no responsibility for its use or distribution of any open source or shareware software or documentation and disclaims any and all liability or damages resulting from use of said software or documentation. The following open source software may be used in PeopleSoft products and the following disclaimers are provided.

#### Apache Software Foundation

This product includes software developed by the Apache Software Foundation (<http://www.apache.org/>). Copyright (c) 1999-2000 The Apache Software Foundation. All rights reserved.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE APACHE SOFTWARE FOUNDATION OR ITS CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

#### OpenSSL

Copyright (c) 1998-2003 The OpenSSL Project. All rights reserved.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE OpenSSL PROJECT "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE OpenSSL PROJECT OR ITS CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

#### SSLeay

Copyright (c) 1995-1998 Eric Young. All rights reserved.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY ERIC YOUNG "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

#### Loki Library

Copyright (c) 2001 by Andrei Alexandrescu. This code accompanies the book:

Alexandrescu, Andrei. "Modern C++ Design: Generic Programming and Design Patterns Applied". Copyright (c) 2001. Addison-Wesley. Permission to use, copy, modify, distribute and sell this software for any purpose is hereby granted without fee, provided that the above copyright notice appear in all copies and that both that copyright notice and this permission notice appear in supporting documentation.

# Contents

## Reports Preface

<b>About This PeopleBook .....</b>	<b>v</b>
Related Documentation.....	v
Obtaining Documentation Updates.....	v
Ordering Printed Documentation.....	v
Comments and Suggestions.....	vi

## Chapter 1

<b>PeopleSoft Cash Management Reports.....</b>	<b>1</b>
PeopleSoft Cash Management Reports: A to Z.....	1

## Chapter 2

<b>Report Samples.....</b>	<b>3</b>
----------------------------	----------



# About This PeopleBook

PeopleBooks provide you with the information that you need to implement and use PeopleSoft applications.

This preface discusses:

- Related documentation.
- Comments and suggestions.

---

## Related Documentation

This section discusses how to:

- Obtain documentation updates.
- Order printed documentation.

## Obtaining Documentation Updates

You can find updates and additional documentation for this release, as well as previous releases, on the PeopleSoft Customer Connection web site. Through the Documentation section of PeopleSoft Customer Connection, you can download files to add to your PeopleBook Library. You'll find a variety of useful and timely materials, including updates to the full PeopleSoft documentation that is delivered on your PeopleBooks CD-ROM.

---

**Important!** Before you upgrade, you must check PeopleSoft Customer Connection for updates to the upgrade instructions. PeopleSoft continually posts updates as the upgrade process is refined.

---

### See Also

PeopleSoft Customer Connection web site, <http://www.peoplesoft.com/corp/en/login.asp>

## Ordering Printed Documentation

You can order printed, bound volumes of the complete PeopleSoft documentation that is delivered on your PeopleBooks CD-ROM. PeopleSoft makes printed documentation available for each major release shortly after the software is shipped. Customers and partners can order printed PeopleSoft documentation by using any of these methods:

- Web
- Telephone
- Email

## **Web**

From the Documentation section of the PeopleSoft Customer Connection web site, access the PeopleSoft Press web site under the Ordering PeopleBooks topic. The PeopleSoft Press web site is a joint venture between PeopleSoft and Consolidated Publications Incorporated (CPI), the book print vendor. Use a credit card, money order, cashier's check, or purchase order to place your order.

## **Telephone**

Contact CPI at 800 888 3559.

## **Email**

Send email to CPI at [psoftpress@cc.larwood.com](mailto:psoftpress@cc.larwood.com).

## **See Also**

PeopleSoft Customer Connection web site, <http://www.peoplesoft.com/corp/en/login.asp>

---

## **Comments and Suggestions**

Your comments are important to us. We encourage you to tell us what you like, or what you would like to see changed about PeopleBooks and other PeopleSoft reference and training materials. Please send your suggestions to:

PeopleSoft Product Documentation Manager PeopleSoft, Inc. 4460 Hacienda Drive Pleasanton, CA 94588

Or send email comments to [doc@peoplesoft.com](mailto:doc@peoplesoft.com).

While we cannot guarantee to answer every email message, we will pay careful attention to your comments and suggestions.

# CHAPTER 1

## PeopleSoft Cash Management Reports

This appendix provides an overview of PeopleSoft Cash Management reports and enables you to view a summary table of all reports.

---

**Note.** For samples of these reports, see the Portable Document Format (PDF) fields that are published on CD-ROM with your documentation.

---

### PeopleSoft Cash Management Reports: A to Z

This table lists all of the reports provided with PeopleSoft Cash Management, sorted alphanumerically by report ID. The reports listed are all Crystal reports.

Report ID and Report Name	Description	Navigation	Run Control Page
FIN3003 Fees & Interest	Shows miscellaneous transaction details for a specified bank ID, bank account, and statement ID number.	Cash Management, Reports, Fees and Interest	RUN_FIN3003
TRC1000 Accounting Entries	Shows comprehensive accounting entry information for a specified business unit and accounting ID.	Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Accounting Entries Report	RUN_TRC1000
TRC1004 Actual vs. Projected Cash Positions	Lists actual versus projected cash positions for a specified business unit, tree name, and tree node.	Cash Management, Reports, Actual v Projected by BU	RUN_TRC1004
TRC1008 Actual vs. Projected Cash Positions by Currency	Lists, by currency code, actual versus projected cash positions for a specified business unit, tree name, and tree node.	Cash Management, Reports, Actual v Projected by BU	RUN_TRC1008
TRC1009 Actual vs. Projected Cash Positions by Account	Lists actual versus projected cash positions for comparison by bank account number.	Cash Management, Reports, Actual v Projected by Account	RUN_TRC1009
TRC1010 Settlement Instructions	Shows settlement instruction information for all settlement IDs of a specified SetID.	Cash Management, Reports, Settlement Instructions	RUN_TRC1010
TRC1014 Cash Flow Settlements	Lists bank, account, and settlement information for cashflows of a specified business unit and timeframe.	Cash Management, Reports, Cash Flow Settlements	RUN_TRC1014

Report ID and Report Name	Description	Navigation	Run Control Page
TRC3005 In-House Bank Statement	Lists transaction and interest accrual activity for a specified bank and account during a defined timeframe.	Cash Management, In-House Banking, In-House Bank Statements	RUN_TRC3005
TRC4000 Netting Balance List	Lists comprehensive balance information for all nets of a specified netting status and timeframe.	Cash Management, Reports, Netting Balance List	RUN_TRC4000
TRC4010 Netting Advice Balance Summary	Lists total receivable, total payable, and total net amounts for a specified netting status and timeframe. The amounts are formatted for faxing.	Cash Management, Report,Netting Advice Summary	RUN_TRC4010
TRC4020 Netting Advice Balance Detail	Lists detailed information (such as accounts payable/accounts receivable association, business unit, gross amount, and net amount) for all nets of a specified netting status and timeframe.	Cash Management, Report, Netting Advice Detail	RUN_TRC4020
TRC4050 Fee Structures	Shows comprehensive fee structure information for a specified bank code, including the fee description, type, minimum and maximum ranges, and rate and price information.	Banking, Account Analysis, Fee Structures Report	RUN_TRC4050
TRC4060 Actual vs. Projected Cash Position	Lists actual versus projected cash positions by a specified tree name and value date.	Cash Management, Reports, Actual v Projected by Position	RUN_TRC4060
TRC4090 Book to Bank Reconciliation	Lists Book to Bank Reconciliation details for a selected bank account, including adjusted bank statement balance or ledger balance information.	Banking, Reconcile Statements, Book to Bank Reconciliation  Click Detail on the Book to Bank Reconciliation page. Click Report on the Book to Bank Reconciliation Details page.	RUN_TRC4090

## CHAPTER 2

# Report Samples

This chapter provides report samples.

For the online samples of these reports, see the PDF files that are published on CD-ROM with your online documentation.



Report ID: FIN3003

PeopleSoft Financials  
Fees & InterestPage No. 1  
Run Date 11/19/2003  
Run Time 4:47:09 PM

Bank Number: 101  
Bank Account: 45700899  
Statement ID: 1,000

Rec Number	Transaction Ref Number	Transaction Amount	Bank Date	Bank Trans Code	Error Reason
000000001	EXT001	1,000.00	11/15/2000	Fee	Unreconciled
000000002	EXT005	1,160.00	11/15/2000	Fee	Unreconciled
000000003	EXT015	1,104.00	11/15/2000	Fee	Reconciled
000000004	EXT020	1,100.00	11/15/2000	Fee	Reconciled
000000005	EXT023	1,100.00	11/15/2000	Fee	Unreconciled

Total Misc Transactions:	5
Total Misc Amount:	5,464.00



Report ID TRC1000

**PeopleSoft Treasury  
Accounting Entries**

Page No. 1  
Run Date 11/22/2003  
Run Time 8:08:12 PM

Business Unit	US001
Accounting ID	0000000094
Accounting Date	3/24/2003
Error Status	None
Accounting Status	Provisional

<u>Line</u>	<u>GL Unit</u>	<u>Account</u>	<u>Alt Acct</u>	<u>Base Amount</u>	<u>Transaction Amount</u>		<u>Source Code</u>	<u>Event ID</u>	<u>GL Status</u>	
1	US001	100001		4,166.67	USD	4,166.67	USD	Deals	UNDO-1	Hold
2	US001	275100		0.00	USD	0.00	USD	Deals	UNDO-1	Hold
3	US001	212100		-4,166.67	USD	-4,166.67	USD	Deals	UNDO-1	Hold



Report ID: TRC1004

PeopleSoft Financials

Page no: 1

Run Date 1/23/2002

Run Time: 3:47:31PM

### ACTUAL v. PROJECTED CASH POSITIONS

**Business Unit:**

Bank:  Bank ID:

Account:  Currency:

**Actual**

Close Date

Closing Balance

Value Date

**Projected**

Cash Position

Calc Date

End of Report



Report ID: TRC1008

PeopleSoft Financials  
**Actual vs. Projected Cash Positions by Currency**

Page No.: 1  
Run Date: 11/22/2003  
Run Time: 9:16:58 PM

Business Unit: US001

<b>Actual</b>		<b>Projected</b>			
Currency	Closing Balance Date	Closing Balance	Calc Date	Value Date	
USD	8/31/2003	45,000.00	11/22/2003	8/31/2003	45,000.00

End of Report



Report ID: TRC1009

PeopleSoft Financials  
**ACTUAL v. PROJECTED CASH POSITIONS**

Page No.: 1  
Run Date: 11/22/2003  
Run Time: 9:20:59 PM

Business Unit: **US001**

Bank:

Bank ID:

**121042882**

Currency: USD

Account: CHCK 0741-256458

<b>Actual</b>		<b>Projected</b>		
<u>Closing Balance Date</u>	<u>Closing Balance</u>	<u>Calc Date</u>	<u>Value Date</u>	<u>EOD Cash Position</u>
8/31/2003	45,000.00	11/22/2003	8/31/2003	45,000.00



Report ID: TRC1010

PeopleSoft Treasury  
Settlement Instructions

Page No. 1  
Run Date 11/19/2003  
Run Time 10:53:58 AM

SetID: SHARE

Settlement ID: BLBNK

Currency: BEF

Description: BEF Settlement Instructions

Account Number	Branch_ID	Check Digit	DFI Qualifier	DFI_ID	Instructions	Remit To
4824685		72			BLBNK	

72 BLBNK

72 BLBNK



Report ID: TRC1014

PeopleSoft Financials

Page No.

1

**CASH FLOW SETTLEMENTS**

Run Date

5/23/01

Run Time

5:32:31 PM

Source Business Unit:

Payment Selection Status:

Value Date	Source ID	Bank	Acct Owner	Acct Key	External Bank ID	Bank Account Number	GL Account	Pay Method	Settlement	Settlement ID
Amount		Base Amount	Paid Amount	Paid Amt Bank Base	Base Paid Amt	Payment ID	Cpty Ref		Approver	



Report TRC3005

PeopleSoft Financials  
IN HOUSE BANK STATEMENT

Run Date 11/19/2003  
Run Time 3:36:44 PM  
Page No. 1

Bank:

Account:

For Period

Opening Balance:

Total Credit:

Total Debit:

Credit Rate Index:

Debit Rate Index:

Credit Rate Type:  
Debit Rate Type:

Credit Margin:  
Debit Margin:

Business Date	Transaction Type	Transaction Source ID	Debit	Credit
---------------	------------------	-----------------------	-------	--------

Interest Accrued:	Transaction total
New Balance:	Interest Accrued Since last Period



Report TRC4000

PeopleSoft Financials

NETTING BALANCE REPORT

Page No.

1

Run Date:

5/23/01

Run Time:

5:13:17PM

Netting Status:

Netting Reference	Netting Description	Total Receivable	Total Payable	Netting Amount	Balance Amount	Currency	Netting Date	Settlement Date
-------------------	---------------------	------------------	---------------	----------------	----------------	----------	--------------	-----------------

---



Report Id: TRC4010

PeopleSoft Financials  
ADVICE of NETTING BALANCE (Summary)

Page No. 1  
Run Date: 5/23/01  
Run Time: 4:57:40PM

To:

Netting Advice No:	
Contract ID:	

Date: 5/23/01

From:

Netting Date:

Total Receivable Amount:	
Total Payable Amount:	
Total Net Amount:	
Total Balance Amount:	

Netting Status



Report Id: TRC4020

**PeopleSoft Financials**  
**ADVICE of NETTING BALANCE (Detail)**

Page No. 1  
Run Date: 11/20/2003  
Run Time: 6:20:39 PM

Netting Status: Closed

<u>AR/AP</u>	Acctg Date	Netting Reference ID	Vendor or Customer	Voucher or Item	Business Unit	Gross Amount	Netted Amount	Balance Netting Amount Currency
--------------	------------	----------------------	--------------------	-----------------	---------------	--------------	---------------	---------------------------------

Netting Reference: 000000000004

AP/AR: **P**

P

P	11/20/200	000000000004	JPN000002	00000007	JPN01	52.50	0.00	52.50	USD
P	11/20/200	000000000004	JPN000002	00000090	JPN01	105.00	105.00	0.00	USD

157,50

AP/AR: **R**

8

R 11/20/2000 000000000004 JPN02 ICE#1.1 JPN01 26.25 26.25 0.00 USD  
R 11/20/2000 000000000004 JPN02 ICE#1.2 JPN01 26.25 26.25 0.00 USD

105.00



Report ID TRC4050

**Fee Structures**  
**PeopleSoft Financials**

Page No.

1

Run Time

5/24/01

Run Time

12:10:19 AM

<b>SetId</b>	SHARE	<b>Bank Code</b>	USBNK	<b>Fee Structure Code</b>	CHCK
<b>Account</b>	CHCK	<b>Account Number</b>	0741-256458	<b>Acct Description</b>	USBNK CHECKING ACCT

<b>Fee</b>	<b>Fee Description</b>	<b>Fee Type</b>	<b>Base Fee</b>	<b>Price</b>	<b>Min Fee</b>	<b>Max Fee</b>	<b>Rate</b>	<b>From</b>	<b>To</b>	<b>Price</b>
000000	Ledger Bal-Avg Net	Total/Balance	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	1	0	0.00
000010	Collected Bal-Avg Net	Total/Balance	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	1	0	0.00
000120	Adjusted Earnings Allow Rate	Total/Balance	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	1	0	0.00
010000	DDA Maint	Flat Fee	135.00	1.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	1	0	0.00
100000	Brnch Dep	Tiered Price	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	1	99,999	0.75
150100	Checks Pd-Reg	Tiered Price	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	1	1,000	0.04
150100	Checks Pd-Reg	Tiered Price	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	1,001	99,999	0.03
350104	Out Fedwire-Auto-Freeform	Tiered Price	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	1	99,999	4.50
350300	Incoming Fedwire Trnsf	Tiered Price	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	1	99,999	3.50

End of Report



Report ID: TRC4060

PeopleSoft Financials  
Actual Vs Projected Cash Position

Page No. 1  
Run Date 11/22/2003  
Run Time 9:24:01 PM

Tree Name:- **TR\_CASH\_POSITION** Value Date **8/31/2003**

Tree Node	Source Set	Source Id	Amount
<b>CASH POSITION</b>			
<b>CASH</b>			
		BANK BALANCE	45,000.00
		BANK BALANCE	45,000.00
			<b>90,000.00</b>
<b>BEGINNING LEDGER BAL</b>			
<b>CASH</b>			
		BANK BALANCE	45,000.00
		BANK BALANCE	45,000.00
			<b>90,000.00</b>



Report ID: TRC4090

PeopleSoft Financials  
Book to Bank Reconciliation Report

Page No. 1  
Run Date 11/22/2003  
Run Time 8:14:45 PM

Bank ID	Account Number	Bank Currency	Business Unit	BU Currency	Statement ID	Book to Bank Status	
121042882	0741-256458	USD	US001	USD	1	<b>In progress</b>	
Ledger	Fiscal Year	Period	Begin Date	End Date	Statement Date	User ID	Last Update DateTime
LOCAL	2003	11	11/1/2003	11/30/2003	11/4/2003	VP1	2003/11/22 20:13:51.0

<b>Bank Statement Balance</b>	0.00	<b>Ledger Balance</b>	-3,495.51
<b>Payments in Transit</b>	0.00	<b>Unbooked Fees and Interest</b>	-62.00
<b>Deposits in Transit</b>	0.00	<b>Unbooked Payments</b>	-451,020.30
<b>GL Adjustments</b>	-6,596,959.20	<b>Unbooked Deposits</b>	-210,719.75
		<b>Bank Adjustments</b>	0.00
<b>Bank Adjustments Subtotal</b>	-6,596,959.20	<b>GL Adjustments Subtotal</b>	-661,802.05
<b>Total Adjusted Bank Balance</b>	-6,596,959.20	<b>Total Adjusted Ledger Balance</b>	-665,297.56
<b>Book to Bank Difference</b>	-5,931,661.64		

**Fees & Interest**

Transaction Reference	Monetary Amount	Transaction Date	Transaction Code	Description(If Any)
BF-10103	-12.00	2/25/2000		Fee Expense
BF-10104	-15.00	2/25/2000		Fee Expense
INT10	-10.00	2/25/2000		Interest Expense
INT12	-25.00	2/25/2000		Interest Expense
<b>Transactions Subtotal :</b>	<b>-62.00</b>			

**Unbooked Deposits**

Transaction Reference	Monetary Amount	Transaction Date	Transaction Code	Description(If Any)
000001	-10.00	3/1/1999		Deposits
JMS092310	-5,000.01	8/1/2000		Deposits
PIRD200	-50,000.00	8/11/2000		Deposits
PIRD201	-80,000.00	8/1/2000		Deposits
PIRD202	-5,518.99	8/1/2000		Deposits
PIRD203	-8,490.75	8/3/2000		Deposits
PIRD204	-7,500.00	8/5/2000		Deposits
PIRD205	-4,200.00	8/7/2000		Deposits
PIRD200	-50,000.00	8/11/2000		Deposits
<b>Transactions Subtotal :</b>	<b>-210,719.75</b>			



Report ID: TRC4090

PeopleSoft Financials  
Book to Bank Reconciliation Report

Page No. 2  
Run Date 11/22/2003  
Run Time 8:14:45 PM

Bank ID	Account Number	Bank Currency	Business Unit	BU Currency	Statement ID	Book to Bank Status	
121042882	0741-256458	USD	US001	USD	1	<b>In progress</b>	
Ledger	Fiscal Year	Period	Begin Date	End Date	Statement Date	User ID	Last Update DateTime
LOCAL	2003	11	11/1/2003	11/30/2003	11/4/2003	VP1	2003/11/22 20:13:51.1

**Unbooked Payments**

Transaction Reference	Monetary Amount	Transaction Date	Transaction Code	Description(If Any)
TRW0000000001	35,000.00	8/1/2000	Wire - Disbursement	
TRW0000000002	14,532.00	8/1/2000	Wire - Disbursement	
TRW0000000003	387.19	8/1/2000	Wire - Disbursement	
TRW0000000007	6,500.01	8/8/2000	Wire - Disbursement	
TRW0000000005	1,000,000.00	8/2/2000	Wire - Disbursement	
000001	-1,142.50	7/30/2000	Check	
000002	-2,408.75	7/29/2000	Check	
000003	-15,677.97	7/30/2000	Check	
000004	-40,783.68	7/30/2000	Check	
000005	-29,346.65	7/30/2000	Check	
000006	-524,574.29	7/28/2000	Check	
000007	-4,381.13	7/30/2000	Check	
000008	-37,357.88	7/30/2000	Check	
JMS092276	15,000.00	8/1/2000	Payment	
JMS092285	7,580.00	8/1/2000	Payment	
000000000357	-1,000,000.00	6/2/2000	Wire - Disbursement	
TFX1	10,000.00	4/17/2000	Wire - Disbursement	
TFX2	10,000.00	4/17/2000	Wire - Disbursement	
TFX3	10,000.00	4/17/2000	Wire - Disbursement	
000000000362	80,000.00	8/11/2000	Wire - Disbursement	
000005	-29,346.65	7/30/2000	Check	
TFX1	10,000.00	4/17/2000	Wire - Disbursement	
TRW0000000001	35,000.00	8/1/2000	Wire - Disbursement	
<b>Transactions Subtotal :</b>	<b>-451,020.30</b>			